

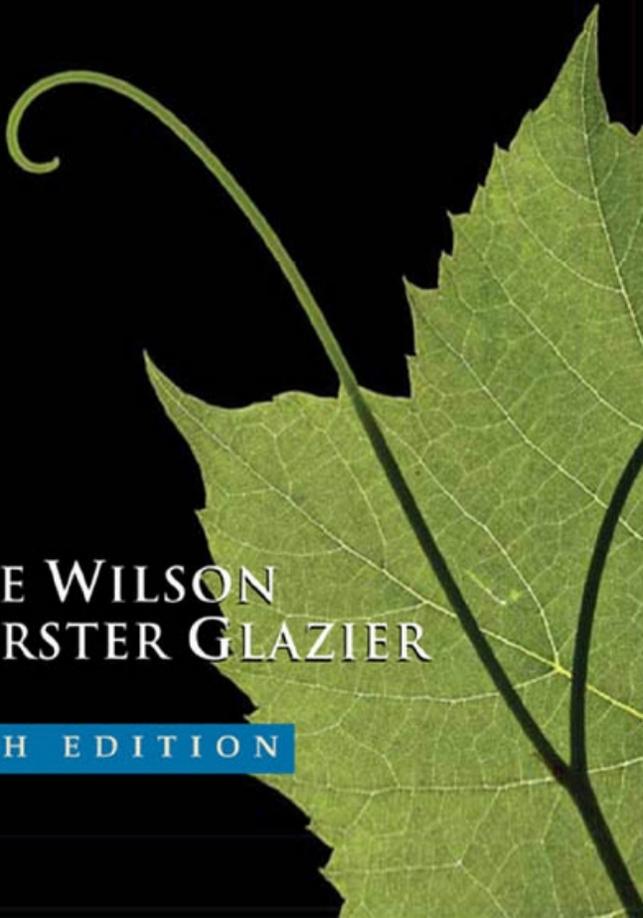
*The* LEAST  
*You Should Know About*  
ENGLISH

WRITING SKILLS

Form C

PAIGE WILSON  
TERESA FERSTER GLAZIER

TENTH EDITION



## CORRECTION SYMBOLS

<b>adj</b>	incorrect adjective (p. 28)
<b>adv</b>	incorrect adverb (p. 29)
<b>apos</b>	apostrophe (p. 35 and p. 41)
<b>awk</b>	awkward phrasing (p. 145)
<b>c</b>	comma needed (p. 176 and p. 183)
<b>cap</b>	capitalization (p. 198)
<b>cliché</b>	overused expression (p. 144)
<b>cs</b>	comma splice (p. 176)
<b>dm</b>	dangling modifier (p. 133)
<b>frag</b>	fragment (p. 80)
<b>mm</b>	misplaced modifier (p. 133)
<b>p</b>	punctuation (p. 169)
<b>pro</b>	incorrect pronoun (p. 155)
<b>pro agr</b>	pronoun agreement (p. 156)
<b>pro ref</b>	pronoun reference (p. 158)
<b>ro</b>	run-on sentence (p. 87)
<b>shift</b>	shift in time (p. 123) or person (p. 164)
<b>sp</b>	misspelled word (p. 3)
<b>s-v agr</b>	subject-verb agreement (p. 116)
<b>wordy</b>	wordiness (p. 145)
<b>ww</b>	wrong word (p. 4 and p. 13)
<b>¶</b>	faulty paragraphing (p. 208)
<b>//</b>	not parallel (p. 149)
<b>Δ</b>	word(s) missing (p. 233)

The LEAST  
*You Should Know about*  
ENGLISH

*This page intentionally left blank*

*The* **LEAST**  
*You Should Know about*  
**ENGLISH**  
WRITING SKILLS

Form **C**

TENTH EDITION

PAIGE WILSON

PASADENA CITY COLLEGE

TERESA FERSTER GLAZIER

LATE, WESTERN ILLINOIS UNIVERSITY



WADSWORTH  
CENGAGE Learning™



**The Least You Should Know about  
English, Form C, Tenth Edition  
Paige Wilson, Teresa Ferster  
Glazier, Late**

Senior Publisher: Lyn Uhl

Acquisitions Editor: Annie Todd

Assistant Editor: Janine Tangney

Editorial Assistant: Melanie Opacki

Senior Marketing Manager: Kirsten  
Stoller

Manufacturing Manager: Marcia  
Locke

Marketing Coordinator: Ryan Ahern

Marketing Communications  
Manager: Martha Pfeiffer

Print Buyer: Susan Spencer

Technology Project Manager: Emily  
Ryan

Art Director: Jill Ort

Senior Rights Acquisition Account  
Manager: Roberta Broyer

Content Project Management:  
Pre-PressPMG

Production Service:  
Pre-PressPMG

Cover Designer: Dick Hannus

Cover Image: istockphotos.com/©  
Florea Marius Catalin

Compositor: Pre-PressPMG

© 2011, 2008, 2005 Wadsworth, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at **Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706**

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **[www.cengage.com/permissions](http://www.cengage.com/permissions)**. Further permissions questions can be emailed to **[permissionrequest@cengage.com](mailto:permissionrequest@cengage.com)**.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2009936595

ISBN 13: 978-0-495-90286-7

ISBN 10: 0-495-90286-1

**Wadsworth**

20 Channel Center Street  
Boston, MA 02210  
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil and Japan. Locate your local office at **[international.cengage.com/region](http://international.cengage.com/region)**

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

For your course and learning solutions, visit **[www.cengage.com](http://www.cengage.com)**. Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **[www.ichapters.com](http://www.ichapters.com)**.

## CONTENTS

*To the Instructor* ix

*Acknowledgments* x

### **What Is the Least You Should Know? 1**

#### **1. WORD CHOICE AND SPELLING 3**

Your Own List of Misspelled Words 3

Words Often Confused (Set 1) 4

Proofreading Exercise 12

Sentence Writing 12

Words Often Confused (Set 2) 13

Proofreading Exercise 20

Sentence Writing 21

The Eight Parts of Speech 22

Paragraph Exercise 27

Sentence Writing 27

Adjectives and Adverbs 28

Proofreading Exercise 34

Sentence Writing 34

Contractions 35

Paragraph Exercise 39

Sentence Writing 40

Possessives 41

Paragraph Exercise 46

Sentence Writing 46

**Review of Contractions and Possessives 47**

Words That Can Be Broken into Parts 49

Rule for Doubling a Final Letter 49

**Progress Test 52**

Using a Dictionary 53

#### **2. SENTENCE STRUCTURE 59**

Finding Subjects and Verbs 61

Paragraph Exercise 66

Sentence Writing 66

Locating Prepositional Phrases	67
Paragraph Exercise	72
Sentence Writing	72
Understanding Dependent Clauses	73
Paragraph Exercise	79
Sentence Writing	79
Correcting Fragments	80
Proofreading Exercise	85
Sentence Writing	86
Correcting Run-on Sentences	87
<b>Review of Fragments and Run-On Sentences</b>	<b>93</b>
Proofreading Exercise	94
Sentence Writing	94
Identifying Verb Phrases	95
<b>Review Exercise</b>	<b>99</b>
Using Standard English Verbs	100
Proofreading Exercise	105
Sentence Writing	105
Using Regular and Irregular Verbs	106
<b>Progress Test</b>	<b>115</b>
Maintaining Subject-Verb Agreement	116
Proofreading Exercise	122
Sentence Writing	122
Avoiding Shifts in Time	123
Proofreading Exercises	124
Recognizing Verbal Phrases	126
Paragraph Exercise	130
Sentence Writing	132
Correcting Misplaced or Dangling Modifiers	133
Proofreading Exercise	136
Sentence Writing	136
Following Sentence Patterns	137
Paragraph Exercise	142
Sentence Writing	143
Avoiding Clichés, Awkward Phrasing, and Wordiness	144
Proofreading Exercises	147
Correcting for Parallel Structure	149
Proofreading Exercise	154
Sentence Writing	154
Using Pronouns	155
Proofreading Exercise	162
Sentence Writing	163
Avoiding Shifts in Person	164
Proofreading Exercises	164
<b>Review of Sentence Structure Errors</b>	<b>166</b>
Proofreading Exercise	167

### 3. PUNCTUATION AND CAPITAL LETTERS 169

- Period, Question Mark, Exclamation Point, Semicolon,  
Colon, Dash 169
  - Proofreading Exercise 174
  - Sentence Writing 175
- Comma Rules 1, 2, and 3 176
  - Proofreading Exercise 181
  - Sentence Writing 182
- Comma Rules 4, 5, and 6 183
  - Proofreading Exercise 188
  - Sentence Writing 189
  - Review of the Comma 190
  - Comma Review Exercise 190**
  - Sentence Writing 190
- Quotation Marks and Underlining/*Italics* 191
  - Paragraph Exercise 196
  - Sentence Writing 197
- Capital Letters 198
  - Review of Punctuation and Capital Letters 203**
  - Comprehensive Test 204**

### 4. WRITING 206

- What Is the Least You Should Know about  
Writing? 207
- Basic Structures 208
  - I. The Paragraph 208
    - Defining a Paragraph 208
    - Types of Paragraphs 208
  - II. The Essay 210
    - The Five-Paragraph Essay and Beyond 211
    - Defining an Essay 212
    - “Neither a Borrower nor a Lender Be” 212
- Writing Skills 215
  - III. Writing in Your Own Voice 215
    - Narration 216
    - Description 218
    - Writing Assignments 219
      - Assignment 1 Narration: Famous Sayings 219**
      - Assignment 2 Description: A Valuable Object 219**
  - IV. Finding a Topic 220
    - Look to Your Interests 220
    - Focused Free Writing (or Brainstorming) 220
    - Clustering 221
    - Talking with Other Students 222
      - Assignment 3 List Your Interests 222**
      - Assignment 4 Do Some Free Writing 222**
      - Assignment 5 Try Clustering Ideas 222**

- V. Organizing Ideas 222
  - Thesis Statements 223
    - Exercise 1 Topic, Fact, or Thesis? 223
    - Assignment 6 Write a Thesis Statement 224**
  - Organizing an Essay 224
  - Topic Sentences 225
  - Organizing Body Paragraphs (or Single Paragraphs) 225
  - Transitional Expressions 225
    - Exercise 2 Adding Transitional Expressions 226
    - Assignment 7 Let's Get Organized! 227**
- VI. Supporting with Details 227
  - Types of Support 228
    - Assignment 8 Write an Essay on One of Your Interests 230**
    - Assignment 9 An Embarrassing Experience 230**
- VII. Revising Your Papers 230
  - Assignment 10 To Share or Not to Share? 232**
  - Revision Checklist 233
  - Exchanging Papers 233
  - Proofreading Aloud 233
    - Assignment 11 Are You an Optimist or a Pessimist? 234**
    - Assignment 12 Are There Different Ways to Be Smart? 234**
    - Assignment 13 The Best (or Worst) Decision 234**
    - Assignment 14 I Would If I Could 234**
- VIII. Presenting Your Work 235
  - Paper Formats 235
  - Titles 235
- IX. Writing an Argument 236
  - Taking a Stand and Proving Your Point 236
  - "Cry First, Then Adjust" 236
  - Three Requirements of a Strong Written Argument 238
    - Assignment 15 Take a Stand on Academic Competition 239**
  - A Longer, More Challenging Reading 239
  - "Science Fiction: The Future of Spelling" 239
- X. Writing Summaries 241
  - Sample Summary 242
  - "Bollywood Film Facts" 242
    - Assignment 16 Write a Short Summary: Ask Yourself, "What's the Big Idea?" 245**
  - "Cat Lovers vs. Dog Lovers" 245
  - Summary Checklist 246
    - Assignment 17 Respond to a Reading in One of Three Ways 247**
  - "Bollywood: Behind the Glamour" 247

*Answers 251*

*Index 323*

## TO THE INSTRUCTOR

This book is for students who need to review basic English skills and who may profit from a simplified “least you should know” approach. Parts 1 to 3 cover the essentials of word choice and spelling, sentence structure, punctuation and capitalization. Part 4 on Writing teaches students the basic structures of the paragraph and the essay, along with the writing skills necessary to produce them.

The “least you should know” approach attempts to avoid the use of linguistic terminology whenever possible. Students work with words they know instead of learning a vocabulary they may never use again.

Abundant exercises include practice writing sentences and proofreading paragraphs. Diligent students learn to use the rules automatically and thus *carry their new skills over into their writing*. Most exercises consist of sets of ten thematically related, informative sentences on both timely and timeless subjects—anything from a moon crater named after Michael Jackson to ways to avoid being struck by lightning. Such exercises reinforce the need for coherence and details in student writing. With answers provided at the back of the book, students can correct their own work and progress at their own pace.

The Tenth Edition includes new and updated exercises and tests throughout Parts 1–3. Part 4 on Writing has been fully revised to offer a new section on “Writing an Argument,” along with many other improvements. Students will read and respond to examples of strong arguments by both student and professional writers. This new section also includes a longer reading to challenge students and help them prepare for future classes. In addition, the old 100-Word Summary assignment has become a separate section, “Writing Summaries,” with broader, more flexible coverage and assignments. As always, Part 4 on Writing outlines the writing process and stresses the development of the student’s written “voice.” Writing assignments still follow each discussion. By working their way through the new Writing section, students will improve their reading and learn to write relevant personal essays, strong arguments, and effective summaries.

*The Least You Should Know about English* functions equally well in the classroom and at home as a self-tutoring text. The simple explanations, ample exercises, and answers at the back of the book provide students with everything they need to progress on their own. Students who have previously been overwhelmed by the complexities of English should, through mastering simple rules and through writing and rewriting simple papers, gain enough competence to succeed in further composition courses.

As in all previous editions, **Form C** differs from **Forms A and B** in its exercises, writing samples, and assignments; however, the explanatory sections are the same.

A **Test Booklet** with additional exercises and ready-to-photocopy tests accompanies this text and is available to instructors.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

For their extremely helpful commentary on the book, I would like to thank the following reviewers:

Patti Casey, *Tyler Junior College*  
Carole Harris, *New York City College of Technology*  
Randy Johnson, *Centralia College*  
Kenneth Kottka, *Chabot College*  
Karen McGuire, *Pasadena City College*

In addition, thanks to my publishing team for their expertise and hard work: Annie Todd, Janine Tangney, Melanie Opacki, and Jessica Rasile.

For their specific contributions to Form C, I extend my gratitude to the following student writers: Eric Coffey, Yesenia Adame, Amanda Gomez, Sherika McPeters, Bryant Ramli, Ruby Warren, and InYoung Yang.

As always, I am especially indebted to my family, friends, students, and colleagues for their ongoing support and encouragement.

*Paige Wilson*  
*Pasadena City College*

This book is dedicated to the memory of Teresa Ferster Glazier (1907–2004). In creating *The Least You Should Know about English*, she discovered a way to teach grammar and writing that students have actually enjoyed for thirty years. Her explanations and approaches have been constant sources of inspiration for this and all previous coauthored editions, as they will be for all future editions of her text.

# What Is the Least You Should Know?

Most English textbooks try to teach you more than you need to know. This book will teach you the least you should know—and still help you learn to write clearly and acceptably. You won't have to deal with grammatical terms like *gerund*, *modal auxiliary verb*, or *demonstrative pronoun*. You can get along without knowing such technical labels if you learn a few key concepts. You *should* know about the parts of speech and how to use and spell common words; you *should* be able to recognize subjects and verbs; you *should* know the basics of sentence structure and punctuation—but rules, as such, will be kept to a minimum.

The English you'll learn in this book is sometimes called Standard Written English, and it may differ slightly or greatly from the spoken English you use. Standard Written English is the form of writing accepted in business and the professions. So no matter how you speak, you will communicate better in writing when you use Standard Written English. You might *say* something like, "That's a whole nother problem," and everyone will understand, but you would probably want to *write*, "That's a completely different problem." Knowing the difference between spoken English and Standard Written English is essential in college, in business, and in life.

Until you learn the least you should know, you'll probably have difficulty communicating in writing. Take this sentence, for example:

I hope that the committee will except my application for a scholarship.

We assume that the writer used the *sound*, not the meaning, of the word *except* to choose it and in so doing used the wrong word. The sentence should have read as follows:

I hope that the committee will *accept* my application for a scholarship.

Then the writer would have communicated clearly. Or take this sentence:

The manager fired John and Terri and I received a large bonus.

This sentence needs a comma to separate its two statements:

The manager fired John and Terri, and I received a large bonus.

But perhaps the writer meant the following:

The manager fired John, and Terri and I received a large bonus.

Punctuation makes all the difference, especially for Terri. With the help of this text, we hope you'll learn to make your writing so clear that no one will misunderstand it.

As you make your way through this book, it's important to remember information after you learn it because many concepts and structures build upon others. For example, once you can identify subjects and verbs, you'll be better able to recognize fragments, understand subject-verb agreement, and use correct punctuation. Explanations and examples are brief and clear, and it shouldn't be difficult to learn from them—*if you want to*. But you have to want to!

### HOW TO LEARN THE LEAST YOU SHOULD KNOW

1. Read each explanatory section carefully (aloud, if possible).
2. Do the first exercise. Compare your answers with those at the back of the book. If they don't match, study the explanation again to find out why.
3. Do the second exercise and correct it. If you miss a single answer, go back once more to the explanation. You must have missed something. Be tough on yourself. Don't just think, "Maybe I'll get it right next time." Reread the examples, and *then* try the next exercise. It's important to correct each group of ten sentences before moving on so that you'll discover your mistakes early.
4. You may be tempted to quit after you do one or two exercises perfectly. Instead, make yourself finish another exercise. It's not enough to *understand* a concept or structure. You have to *practice* using it.
5. If you're positive, however, after doing several exercises, that you've learned a concept or structure, take the next exercise as a test. If you miss even one answer, you should do all the rest of the questions. Then move on to the proofreading and sentence composing exercises so that your understanding carries over into your writing.

Learning the basics of word choice and spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation does take time. Generally, college students must study a couple of hours outside of class for each hour in class. You may need to study more. Undoubtedly, the more time you spend, the more your writing will improve.

# P A R T 1

---

## Word Choice and Spelling

Anyone can learn to use words more effectively and become a better speller. You can eliminate most of your word choice and spelling errors if you want to. It's just a matter of deciding you're going to do it. If you really intend to improve your word choice and spelling, study each of the following nine sections until you make no mistakes in the exercises.

- Your Own List of Misspelled Words
- Words Often Confused (Sets 1 and 2)
- The Eight Parts of Speech
- Adjectives and Adverbs
- Contractions
- Possessives
- Words That Can Be Broken into Parts
- Rule for Doubling a Final Letter
- Using a Dictionary

### Your Own List of Misspelled Words

On the inside cover of your English notebook or in some other obvious place, write correctly all the misspelled words from your previously graded papers. Review the correct spellings until you're sure of them, and edit your papers to find and correct repeated errors.

## Words Often Confused (Set 1)

Learning the differences between these often-confused words will help you overcome many of your spelling problems. Study the words carefully, with their examples, before trying the exercises.

### **a, an**

Use *an* before a word that begins with a vowel *sound* (*a*, *e*, *i*, and *o*, plus *u* when it sounds like *ub*) or silent *b*. Note that it's the *sound*, not the letter, that matters.

*an* apple, *an* essay, *an* inch, *an* onion

*an* umpire, *an* ugly design (The *u*'s sound like *ub*.)

*an* hour, *an* honest person (The *b*'s are silent.)

Use *a* before a word that begins with a consonant sound (all the sounds except the vowels, plus *u* or *eu* when they sound like *you*).

*a* chart, *a* pie, *a* history book (The *b* is not silent in *history*.)

*a* union, *a* uniform, *a* unit (The *u*'s sound like *you*.)

*a* European vacation, *a* euphemism (*Eu* sounds like *you*.)

### **accept, except**

*Accept* means "to receive willingly."

I *accept* your apology.

*Except* means "excluding" or "but."

Everyone arrived on time *except* him.

### **advise, advice**

*Advise* is a verb. (Pronounce the *s* like a *z*.)

I *advise* you to take your time finding the right job.

*Advice* is a noun. (It rhymes with *rice*.)

My counselor gave me good *advice*.

### **affect, effect**

*Affect* is a verb that means "to alter or influence."

All quizzes will *affect* the final grade.

The happy ending *affected* the mood of the audience.

*Effect* is most commonly used as a noun that means "a result." If *a*, *an*, or *the* is in front of the word, then you'll know it is a noun and will use *effect*.

**all ready,  
already**

The strong coffee had a powerful *effect* on me.

We studied the *effects* of sleep deprivation in my psychology class.

If you can leave out the *all* and the sentence still makes sense, then *all ready* is the form to use.

We're *all ready* for our trip. (*We're ready for our trip* makes sense.)

The banquet is *all ready*. (*The banquet is ready* makes sense.)

But if you can't leave out the *all* and still have a sentence that makes sense, then use *already* (the form in which the *al* has to stay in the word).

They've *already* eaten. (*They've ready eaten* doesn't make sense.)

We have seen that movie *already*.

**are, our**

*Are* is a verb.

We *are* going to Colorado Springs.

*Our* shows we possess something.

We painted *our* fence to match the house.

**brake, break**

*Brake* used as a verb means "to slow or stop motion." It's also the name of the device that slows or stops motion.

I had to *brake* quickly to avoid an accident.

Luckily I just had my *brakes* fixed.

*Break* used as a verb means "to shatter" or "to split." It's also the name of an interruption, as in "a coffee break."

She never thought she would *break* a world record.

Enjoy your spring *break*.

**choose, chose**

The difference here is one of time. Use *choose* for present and future; use *chose* for past.

I will *choose* a new major this semester.

We *chose* the wrong time of year to get married.

**clothes, cloths**

*Clothes* are something you wear; *cloths* are pieces of material you might clean or polish something with.

I love the *clothes* that characters wear in movies.

The car wash workers use special *cloths* to dry the cars.

**coarse, course** *Coarse* describes a rough texture.

I used *coarse* sandpaper to smooth the surface of the board.

*Course* is used for all other meanings.

Of *course* we saw the golf *course* when we went to Pebble Beach.

**complement, compliment** The one spelled with an *e* means to complete something or bring it to perfection.

Use a color wheel to find a *complement* for purple.

Juliet's personality *complements* Romeo's: she is practical, and he is a dreamer.

The one spelled with an *i* has to do with praise. Remember "I like compliments," and you'll remember to use the *i* spelling when you mean praise.

My evaluation included a really nice *compliment* from my coworkers.

We *complimented* them on their new home.

**conscious, conscience** *Conscious* means "aware."

They weren't *conscious* of any problems before the accident.

*Conscience* means that inner voice of right and wrong. The extra *n* in *conscience* should remind you of *No*, which is what your conscience often says to you.

My *conscience* told me not to keep the expensive watch I found.

**dessert, desert** *Dessert* is the sweet one, the one people like two helpings of. So give it two helpings of *s*.

We had a whole chocolate cheesecake for *dessert*.

The other one, *desert*, is used for all other meanings and has two pronunciations.

I promise that I won't *desert* you at the party.

The snake slithered slowly across the *desert*.

**do, due**

*Do* is a verb, an action. You *do* something.

I always *do* my best work at night.

But a payment or an assignment is *due*; it is scheduled for a certain time.

Our first essay is *due* tomorrow.

*Due* can also be used before *to* in a phrase that means *because of*.

The outdoor concert was canceled *due to* rain.

**feel, fill**

*Feel* describes *feelings*.

Whenever I stay up late, I *feel* sleepy in class.

*Fill* is the action of pouring into or packing a container fully.

Why did he *fill* the pitcher to the top?

**fourth, forth**

The word *fourth* has *four* in it. (But note that *forty* does not. Remember the word *forty-fourth*.)

This is our *fourth* quiz in two weeks.

My grandparents celebrated their *forty-fourth* anniversary.

If you don't mean a number, use *forth*.

We wrote back and *forth* many times during my trip.

**have, of**

*Have* is a verb. Sometimes, in a contraction, it sounds like *of*. When you say *could've*, the *have* may sound like *of*, but it is not written that way. Always write *could have*, *would have*, *should have*, *might have*.

We should *have* planned our vacation sooner.

Then we could *have* used our coupon for a free one-way ticket.

Use *of* only in a prepositional phrase. (See p. 67.)

She sent me a box *of* chocolates for my birthday.

**hear, here**

The last three letters of *hear* spell "ear." You *hear* with your ear.

When I listen to a sea shell, I *hear* ocean sounds.

The other spelling *here* tells "where." Note that the three words indicating a place or pointing out something all have *here* in them: *here*, *there*, *where*.

I'll be *here* for three more weeks.

**it's, its**

*It's* is a contraction and means "it is" or "it has."

*It's* hot. (*It is* hot.)

*It's* been hot all week. (*It has* been hot all week.)

*Its* is a possessive. (Words such as *its*, *yours*, *hers*, *ours*, *theirs*, and *whose* are already possessive forms and never need an apostrophe. See p. 43.)

The jury had made *its* decision.

The dog pulled at *its* leash.

**knew, new**

*Knew* has to do with knowledge. Both start with *k*.

*New* means "not old."

Her friends *knew* that she wanted a *new* bike.

**know, no**

*Know* has to do with knowledge. Both start with *k*.

By Friday, I must *know* all the state capitals.

*No* means "not any" or the opposite of "yes."

My boss has *no* patience. *No*, I am not exaggerating.

## E X E R C I S E S

Circle the correct words in parentheses. Don't guess! If you aren't sure, turn back to the explanatory pages. When you've finished ten sentences, compare your answers with those at the back of the book. Correct each set of ten sentences before continuing so you'll catch your mistakes early.

### Exercise 1

---

1. I took my family's (advise, advice) and enrolled at (a, an) community college.
2. I wanted to apply to (a, an) university as soon as I graduated from high school.
3. My friend sent in several applications, but the schools didn't (accept, except) him.
4. After he received the news, he decided to take a (brake, break) from school.
5. Now that I'm taking community college classes, I can relax and (choose, chose) the right university for me.

6. I've (all ready, already) taken one (coarse, course) in math and one in history.
7. The classes (are, our) challenging but manageable as long as I keep up with all of the assignments that are (do, due).
8. The instructors make sure that students (know, no) what to (do, due) to complete the assignments.
9. Even though I could (have, of) started at a four-year school, I'm glad that I (choose, chose) a community college.
10. I definitely (feel, fill) that (it's, its) the right place for me.

## Exercise 2

---

1. Soon we may have a (knew, new) way to buy books.
2. (It's, Its) all (do, due) to a device called the Espresso Book Machine.
3. A customer can (choose, chose) a title from (a, an) online list and send the data to the "Espresso" machine.
4. This machine is capable of printing (a, an) 300-page book in only three minutes; it reproduces (it's, its) pages and binds them in a paper cover.
5. One bookstore in London, (all ready, already) has this unique kind of Espresso machine.
6. Libraries could use these instant printers to (complement, compliment) the books in their regular holdings.
7. People might (choose, chose) to print books that have been translated into different languages or ones that have gone out of print.
8. (It's, Its) hard to (know, no) whether customers will (accept, except) the idea of instant books.
9. Once they (hear, here) about the Espresso Book Machine, many people will probably want to try it.
10. The cost of printing (a, an) instant book is reasonable, too; (it's, its) about one penny a page.

Source: *Forbes.com*, April 27, 2009

**Exercise 3**

---

1. (It's, Its) never too late to learn something (knew, new).
2. After living for nearly one hundred years without knowing how to read or write, George Dawson could (have, of) just (accepted, excepted) his life as it was.
3. But he never did (feel, fill) good about hiding his illiteracy from his children or signing his name with (a, an) X.
4. In 1996, George Dawson (choose, chose) to start school for the first time at the age of ninety-eight.
5. Dawson, who was (all ready, already) in his teens when the *Titanic* sank, worked all of his life to support his family and even outlived his (fourth, forth) wife.
6. He had enough memories to (feel, fill) a book, (accept, except) he wouldn't (have, of) been able to read it.
7. When a man in Seattle came to (hear, here) of Dawson's long life and strong desire for (a, an) education, he gave Dawson some (advise, advice).
8. Richard Glaubman, a teacher himself, suggested that Dawson share his experiences in a book; they (are, our) now coauthors of Dawson's autobiography.
9. In the (coarse, course) of his life as an African-American man and the grandson of slaves, Dawson witnessed and felt the (affects, effects) of racism and oppression.
10. But Dawson always believed that the joyful moments in life more than (complemented, complimented) the painful ones, and he titled his book *Life Is So Good*.

Source: *Jet*, April 17, 2000

**Exercise 4**

---

1. If you wear any (clothes, cloths) made of polyester, you may be wearing what used to be (a, an) old movie print.
2. (Do, Due) to the huge numbers of reels of film needed to meet the demands of today's movie audiences, recycling is (a, an) necessary part of the motion picture industry.

3. Companies such as Warner Bros. and New Line Cinema (accept, except) the responsibility for film recycling.
4. Of (coarse, course), the best prints of movies are saved for the future, but there (are, our) usually thousands of leftover copies (all ready, already) to be turned into something else.
5. The recycling process begins by chopping the film into (course, coarse) pieces, then transforming the rubble into a (knew, new) substance, such as polyester fabric.
6. Movie distributors are (conscious, conscience) that collectors and other interested parties would love to get their hands on these extra movie prints.
7. Therefore, security is (a, an) essential part of the movie-recycling process.
8. Someone trying to (brake, break) into a warehouse in search of last month's hottest release would (feel, fill) very disappointed.
9. The five to six reels of each film would (have, of) (all ready, already) been separated and mixed together with other films' reels.
10. (It's, Its) (know, no) surprise that movie companies want to protect their interests.

Source: *Los Angeles Times*, February 17, 2003

## Exercise 5

---

1. Dentists (are, our) hardworking professionals, but most of us don't want to visit them.
2. Almost all of us hate to have (are, our) teeth drilled.
3. Most of us do, however, (accept, except) the need for dental work as a part of modern life.
4. (It's, Its) surprising to learn that dentists used drills on their patients 9,000 years ago.
5. (Knew, New) scientific discoveries have brought (fourth, forth) the remains of nomads who lived in the Stone Age.
6. Amazingly, many of their teeth revealed the (affects, effects) of drilling to eliminate decay.

7. Scientists don't (know, no) exactly what substance was used to (feel, fill) the cavities.
8. (It's, Its) also unclear whether patients were given anything so that they didn't (feel, fill) pain.
9. Based on the drilling patterns, scientists believe that some Stone Age people took advantage of the holes in their teeth for a decorative (affect, effect).
10. They may have used precious stones to (feel, fill) these holes as (a, an) ancient form of "mouth bling."

*Source: National Geographic News, April 4, 2006*

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Find and correct the ten errors contained in the following student paragraph. All of the errors involve Words Often Confused (Set 1).

In the middle of a debate in my speech class last week, I suddenly became very self-conscience. My heart started beating faster, and I didn't no what to due. I looked around to see if my show of nerves was having a affect on the audience. Of coarse, they could here my voice trembling. The topic that we were debating involved whether it would be best to eliminate letter grades in college, and everyone else was doing so well. But for some reason, my face turned red, and I would of left the room if the door had been closer. After the debate, my classmates tried to give me complements, but I new that they were just trying to make me feel better.

## SENTENCE WRITING

The surest way to learn these Words Often Confused is to use them immediately in your own writing. Choose the five pairs or groups of words that you most often confuse from Set 1. Then use each of them correctly in a new sentence. No answers are provided at the back of the book, but you can see if you are using the words correctly by comparing your sentences to the examples in the explanations. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Words Often Confused (Set 2)

Study this second set of words carefully, with their examples, before attempting the exercises. Knowing all of the word groups in these two sets will take care of many of your spelling problems.

### **lead, led**

*Lead* is the metal that rhymes with *bead*.

Old paint is dangerous because it often contains *lead*.

The past form of the verb “to lead” is *led*.

What factors *led* to your decision?

I *led* our school’s debating team to victory last year.

If you don’t mean past time, use *lead*, which rhymes with *bead*.

I will lead the debating team again this year.

### **loose, lose**

*Loose* means “not tight.” Note how *l o o s e* that word is. It has plenty of room for two *o*’s.

My dog has a *loose* tooth.

*Lose* is the opposite of win.

If we *lose* this game, we will be out for the season.

### **passed, past**

The past form of the verb “to pass” is *passed*.

She easily *passed* her math class.

The runner *passed* the baton to her teammate.

I *passed* your house on my way to the store.

Use *past* when it’s not a verb.

I drove *past* your house. (Meaning “I drove *by* your house.”)

I try to learn from *past* experiences.

In the *past*, he worked for a small company.

### **personal, personnel**

Pronounce these two correctly, and you won’t confuse them—*pérsonal*, *personnèl*.

She shared her *personal* views as a parent.

*Personnel* means “a group of employees.”

I had an appointment in the *personnel* office.

**piece, peace**

Remember “piece of pie.” The one meaning “a *piece* of something” always begins with *pie*.

Some children asked for an extra *piece* of candy.

The other one, *peace*, is the opposite of war.

The two sides finally signed a *peace* treaty.

**principal,  
principle**

*Principal* means “main.” Both words have *a* in them: principal, *main*.

The *principal* concern is safety. (main concern)

We paid both *principal* and interest. (main amount of money)

Also, think of a school’s “*principal*” as your “*pal*.”

An elementary school *principal* must be kind. (main administrator)

A *principle* is a “rule.” Both words end in *le*: principle, rule.

I am proud of my *principles*. (rules of conduct)

We value the *principle* of truth in advertising. (rule)

**quiet, quite**

Pronounce these two correctly, and you won’t confuse them. *Quiet* means “free from noise” and rhymes with *diet*.

Tennis players need *quiet* in order to concentrate.

*Quite* means “very” and rhymes with *bite*.

It was *quite* hot in the auditorium.

**right, write**

*Right* means “correct” or “proper.”

You will find your keys if you look in the *right* place.

It also means in the exact location, position, or moment.

Your keys are *right* where you left them.

Let’s go *right* now.

*Write* means to compose sentences, poems, essays, and so forth.

I asked my teacher to *write* a letter of recommendation for me.

**than, then**

*Than* compares two things.

I am taller *than* my sister.

*Then* tells when. (*Then* and *when* rhyme, and both have *e* in them.)

I always write a rough draft of a paper first; *then* I revise it.

**their, there,  
they're**

*Their* is a possessive, meaning belonging to them.

*Their* cars have always been red.

*There* points out something. (Remember that the three words indicating a place or pointing out something all have *here* in them: *here, there, where.*)

I know that I haven't been *there* before.

*There* was a rainbow in the sky.

*They're* is a contraction and means "they are."

*They're* living in Canada now. (*They are* living in Canada now.)

**threw, through**

*Threw* is the past form of "to throw."

We *threw* snowballs at each other.

I *threw* away my application for a scholarship.

If you don't mean "to throw something," use *through*.

We could see our beautiful view *through* the new windows.

They worked *through* their differences.

**two, too, to**

*Two* is a number.

We have written *two* papers so far in my English class.

*Too* means "extra" or "also," and so it has an extra *o*.

The movie was *too* long and *too* violent. (extra)

They are enrolled in that biology class *too*. (also)

Use *to* for all other meanings.

They like *to* ski. They're going *to* the mountains.

**weather,  
whether**

*Weather* refers to conditions of the atmosphere.

Snowy *weather* is too cold for me.

*Whether* means "if."

I don't know *whether* it is snowing there or not.

*Whether* I travel with you or not depends on the weather.

**were, wear,  
where**

These words are pronounced differently but are often confused in writing.

*Were* is the past form of the verb "to be."

We *were* interns at the time.

*Wear* means to have on, as in wearing clothes.

I always *wear* a scarf in winter.

*Where* refers to a place. (Remember that the three words indicating a place or pointing out something all have *here* in them: *here, there, where*.)

*Where* is the mailbox? There it is.

*Where* are the closing papers? Here they are.

**who's, whose**

*Who's* is a contraction and means "who is" or "who has."

*Who's* responsible for signing the checks? (*Who* is responsible?)

*Who's* been reading my journal? (*Who has* been reading my journal?)

*Whose* is a possessive. (Words such as *whose, its, yours, hers, ours, and theirs* are already possessive forms and never need an apostrophe. See p. 43.)

*Whose* keys are these?

**woman,  
women**

The difference here is one of number: *woman* refers to one adult female; *women* refers to two or more adult females.

I know a *woman* who has bowled a perfect game.

I bowl with a group of *women* from my work.

**you're, your**

*You're* is a contraction and means "you are."

*You're* as smart as I am. (*You are* as smart as I am.)

*Your* is a possessive meaning belonging to you.

I borrowed *your* lab book.

## EXERCISES

Circle the correct words in parentheses. When you've finished ten sentences, compare your answers with those at the back of the book. Do only ten sentences at a time so that you will catch your mistakes early.

### Exercise 1

---

1. (Their, There, They're) is a new way to prepare children for earthquakes.
2. Researchers use current technology to put kids (threw, through) a simulated earthquake using virtual reality headphones and goggles.
3. Children in Greece have been the first (two, too, to) receive the training.
4. (Their, There, They're) very likely to experience a real earthquake, according to scientists.
5. The (personal, personnel) who teach students with special needs have seen very positive results from earthquake training.
6. In the (passed, past), children with Down syndrome, for example, would (loose, lose) control and panic during a frightening event such as an earthquake.
7. In a twist of fate, (their, there, they're) was an earthquake in Greece just a few months after some children were trained.
8. After being (lead, led) (through, threw) an artificial quake using virtual reality, the children with Down syndrome (were, wear, where) able to remain calm and follow directions.
9. In fact, all of the children who had experienced a virtual earthquake coped with the event better (than, then) those who hadn't.
10. It's unclear (weather, whether) virtual earthquake training will work as well with adults.

Source: *Science News*, August 5, 2006

### Exercise 2

---

1. As a student on financial aid, I was advised to work on campus or (loose, lose) some of my benefits.
2. At first I didn't know (were, wear, where) to work.

3. It definitely needed to be a (quiet, quite) place so that I could study or (right, write) a paper in my free time.
4. I finally chose to take a job in the (personal, personnel) office.
5. Now that I have been working (their, there, they're) for (two, too, to) months, I know that I made the (right, write) decision.
6. My (principal, principle) duties include filing documents and stuffing envelopes.
7. However, when the receptionist takes a break, I am the one (who's, whose) at the front desk.
8. Once I was sitting up front when the (principal, principle) of my old high school came in to apply for a job at the college.
9. I didn't know (weather, whether) to show that I recognized her or to keep (quiet, quite) about the (passed, past).
10. As a student, I like working on campus for financial-aid benefits better (than, then) working off campus for a tiny paycheck.

### Exercise 3

---

1. (You're, Your) not alone if you don't know (were, wear, where) to shop for pants anymore.
2. (Weather, Whether) (you're, your) a man or a (woman, women), it isn't easy to decide on the best pants to (were, wear, where).
3. The styles are often (two, too, to) (loose, lose) or (two, too, to) tight.
4. (Their, There, They're) never (quiet, quite) (right, write).
5. Anyone (who's, whose) tried to find the perfect pair of jeans, for instance, knows that the fabric is often more important (than, then) the fit.
6. Fabric choice can be a matter of (personal, personnel) taste.
7. You like (you're, your) jeans to be either light or dark, or (you're, your) the kind of person (who's, whose) able to (were, wear, where) both.
8. I have (passed, past) whole rows of dark-colored jeans on my quest for a lighter pair with just the (right, write) amount of fading.

9. I have a friend (who's, whose) wardrobe consists of nothing but vintage jeans and T-shirts.
10. She's a (woman, women) who dresses the same way in every kind of (weather, whether) and for every occasion.

#### Exercise 4

---

1. Recently, several countries have produced life-size androids that are (quiet, quite) remarkable.
2. (Their, There, They're) are (two, too, to) that look exactly like real (woman, women).
3. The (principal, principle) reason for creating these two robots has been to get as close to real human expressions as possible.
4. Both androids are in permanent seated positions, and (their, there, they're) unable to move (their, there, they're) lower bodies.
5. Scientists at Osaka University first introduced Repliee Q1, (who's, whose) life-like appearance and actions amazed visitors to the 2005 World Expo in Japan.
6. Q1 looks like a real human being and uses her head and upper body (two, too, to) react as a real (woman, women) would.
7. Q1 speaks, appears to breathe, and uses her arms to block the impact of objects headed (right, write) at her.
8. South Korean scientists have created a similar female android called EveR-1, (who's, whose) got longer hair (than, then) Q1.
9. EveR-1 speaks, (two, too, to), and can use 400 words in conversation.
10. EveR-1 can make eye contact and can change her expression from happy (two, too, to) sad or mad due (two, too, to) fifteen motors hidden beneath her "skin."

*Source: National Geographic News, June 6, 2005*

#### Exercise 5

---

1. One beautiful morning, you may receive a phone call that changes (you're, your) life.

2. The caller will tell you that (you're, your) half a million dollars richer and that you don't have to do anything other (than, then) be yourself to deserve the money.
3. You might wonder (weather, whether) it is a real or a crank call.
4. Believe it or not, this wonderful (piece, peace) of news is delivered to between twenty and thirty special men and (woman, women) in America every year.
5. (Their, There, They're) unofficially called the "Genius Awards," but (their, there, they're) real title is the MacArthur Fellowships.
6. The MacArthur Foundation awards its fellowships each year based on the (principal, principle) that forward-thinking people deserve an opportunity to pursue their ideas freely and without obligation to anyone.
7. No application is necessary (two, too, to) receive the gift of \$100,000 a year plus health insurance for five years, and no particular field of work receives more consideration (than, then) another.
8. The (principal, principle) characteristic that MacArthur Fellows share is (their, there, they're) creative potential—in any area.
9. Each year, the MacArthur Foundation sends about one hundred "scouts" across the country looking for people with untapped potential (two, too, to) nominate; (than, then) another anonymous group selects the year's recipients.
10. The nominees don't even know that (their, there, they're) going (threw, through) the process until the phone rings on that fateful morning one day.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

See if you can correct the ten errors in this student paragraph. All errors involve Words Often Confused (Set 2).

Their is a house that I have past every day for the passed ten years. It's on a quite street, and it has too big trees in its front yard. Whenever I drive threw that part of the neighborhood, I pull write over and admire that house. The house isn't

prettier than the other houses on the street, but I feel a personal attachment to it that I can't explain. I even call it "my house" whenever I tell anyone about it. I don't know who's house it is now, but if I can afford it, someday I would like to buy "my house" and live there for the rest of my life.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write several sentences using any words you missed in the exercises for Words Often Confused (Set 2).

Sentence writing is a good idea not only because it will help you remember these Words Often Confused, but also because it will be a storehouse for ideas you can later use in writing papers. Here are some topics you might consider writing your sentences about:

- Something you would like to accomplish this year
- Qualities of a good friend
- All-time favorite songs or movies
- Places you would like to know more about
- Reasons why you're in school

Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## The Eight Parts of Speech

Choosing the right word is an important aspect of writing. Some words sound alike but are spelled differently and have different meanings (*past* and *passed*, for instance), and some words are spelled the same but sound different and mean different things (*lead*, for the action of “leading,” and *lead*, for the stuff inside pencils).

One way to choose words more carefully is to understand the roles that words play in sentences. Just as one actor can play many different parts in movies (a hero, a villain, a humorous sidekick), single words can play different parts in sentences (a noun, a verb, an adjective). These are called the *eight parts of speech*, briefly defined with examples below.

**1. Nouns** name *someone, thing, place, or idea* and are used as subjects and objects in sentences. (See pp. 61, 67, and 137 for more about nouns as subjects and objects.)

The **technician** installed the **computers** in the **lab**.

**2. Pronouns** are special words—such as *I, she, him, it, they, and us*—that replace nouns to avoid repeating them. (See p. 155 for more about pronouns.)

**She** (the technician) installed **them** (the computers) in **it** (the lab).

**3. Adjectives** add description to nouns and pronouns—telling *which one, how many, what kind, color, or shape* they are. (See p. 28 for more about adjectives.)

The **best** technician installed **thirty new** computers in the **writing** lab.

The words *a, an, and the* are special forms of adjectives called **articles**. They always point to a noun or a pronoun. They are used so often that there is no need to label them.

**4. Verbs** show action or state of being. (See p. 61 for more about verbs.)

The technician **installed** the new computers in the writing lab; Terri **is** the technician’s name.

**5. Adverbs** add information—such as *when, where, why, or how*—to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. (See p. 29 for more about adverbs.)

**Yesterday** Terri **quickly** installed the **brand** new computers in the writing lab.

**6. Prepositions** show position in *space* and *time* and are followed by noun objects to form prepositional phrases. (See p. 67 for more about prepositions.)

The computers arrived **in** the writing lab **at** noon.

**7. Conjunctions** are connecting words—such as *and, but, and or*—and words that begin dependent clauses—such as *because, since, when, while, and although*. (See p. 73 and p. 88 for more about conjunctions.)

Students still visited the lab **and** the media center **while** Terri installed the computers.

**8. Interjections** interrupt a sentence to show surprise or other emotions and are rarely used in Standard Written English.

**Wow**, Terri is a valuable employee.

To find out what parts of speech an individual word can play, look it up in a good dictionary. (See p. 53.) A list of definitions beginning with an abbreviated part of speech (*n*, *adj*, *prep*, and so on) will catalog its uses. However, seeing how a word is used in a particular sentence is the best way to identify its part of speech. Look at these examples:

Our **train** arrived at exactly three o'clock.

(*Train* is a noun in this sentence, naming the vehicle we call a "train.")

Sammy and Helen **train** dolphins at Sea World.

(*Train* is a verb in this example, expressing the action of teaching skills we call "training.")

Doug's parents drove him to the **train** station.

(*Train* is acting as an adjective here, adding description to the noun "station," telling what *kind* of station it is.)

All of the words in a sentence work together to create meaning, but each one serves its own purpose by playing a part of speech. Think about how each of the words in the following sentence plays the particular part of speech labeled:

n prep adj n adv v adj n prep n conj v  
 Students at community colleges often attend several classes in a day and are  
 adv adj conj pro adv v adv  
 very tired when they finally go home.

Below, you'll find an explanation for each label:

Students	n ( <i>names the people</i> who are the subject of the sentence)
at	prep ( <i>begins a prepositional phrase</i> showing position in space)
community	adj ( <i>adds description</i> to the noun <i>colleges</i> , telling what kind)
colleges	n ( <i>names the place</i> that is the object of the preposition <i>at</i> )
often	adv ( <i>adds to the verb</i> , telling when students attend classes)
attend	v ( <i>shows an action</i> , telling what the students do)
several	adj ( <i>adds description</i> to the noun <i>classes</i> , telling how many)

classes	<b>n</b> ( <i>names the things that the students attend</i> )
in	<b>prep</b> ( <i>begins a prepositional phrase showing position in time</i> )
a	<b>no label</b> ( <i>an article that points to the noun day</i> )
day	<b>n</b> ( <i>names the thing that is the object of the preposition in</i> )
and	<b>conj</b> ( <i>joins the two verbs attend and are</i> )
are	<b>v</b> ( <i>shows a state of being, linking the subject students with the descriptive word tired</i> )
very	<b>adv</b> ( <i>adds to the adjective tired, telling how tired the students are</i> )
tired	<b>adj</b> ( <i>describes the noun subject students</i> )
when	<b>conj</b> ( <i>begins a dependent clause</i> )
they	<b>pro</b> ( <i>replaces the word students as a new subject to avoid repetition</i> )
finally	<b>adv</b> ( <i>adds to the verb, telling when they go home</i> )
go	<b>v</b> ( <i>shows an action, telling what they do</i> )
home.	<b>adv</b> ( <i>adds to the verb, telling where they go</i> )

Familiarizing yourself with the parts of speech will help you spell better now and understand phrases and clauses better later. Each of the eight parts of speech has characteristics that distinguish it from the other seven, but it takes practice to learn them.

## EXERCISES

Label the parts of speech above all of the words in the following sentences using the abbreviations **n**, **pro**, **adj**, **v**, **adv**, **prep**, **conj**, and **interj**. For clarity's sake, the sentences here are very brief, and you may ignore the words *a*, *an*, and *the*.

Refer back to the definitions and examples of the parts of speech whenever necessary. When in doubt, leave a word unmarked until you check the answers at the back of the book after each set of ten sentences.

**Exercise 1**

---

1. Good movies entertain people.
2. They also educate and motivate people.
3. Well-written characters seem real on the screen.
4. Their downfalls or successes have lasting effects on the audience.
5. A person sees a movie with a wild character in it.
6. She or he learns about wildness.
7. Often, the story revolves around a secret.
8. Someone discovers the secret and reveals it in the end.
9. The story usually moves ahead when the main character changes.
10. Such changes are not always positive.

**Exercise 2**

---

1. Clyde Tombaugh discovered the ninth “planet,” Pluto, in 1930.
2. Tombaugh died in 1997 at the age of 90.
3. Scientists loaded Tombaugh’s ashes onto New Horizons, a space probe that was launched in January of 2006.
4. New Horizons will arrive near Pluto in 2015.
5. After the launch of New Horizons, astronomers deleted Pluto from the list of real planets.
6. They determined that real planets must control their own orbits.
7. Pluto is an icy ball under the influence of Neptune’s orbit.
8. Astronomers put Pluto into a new category.
9. Therefore, the official number of planets has changed.
10. Wow! That is an amazing development.

*Source: Newsweek, September 4, 2006*

### Exercise 3

---

1. Mechanical pencils are delicate instruments.
2. I see other students with them.
3. Then I buy one.
4. I open the package.
5. I load the pencil with the tiny shaft of lead.
6. As I put the pencil tip down on the paper, the lead snaps off.
7. Am I an unrefined clod?
8. I believe that I am.
9. Now I know my limitations.
10. Ballpoint pens and wooden pencils are the only writing tools for me.

### Exercise 4

---

1. The following old sayings still have meaning today.
2. A penny saved is a penny earned.
3. A stitch in time saves nine.
4. Haste makes waste.
5. Love me, love my dog.
6. A picture is worth a thousand words.
7. He or she who hesitates is lost.
8. Time flies when you are having fun.
9. The grass is always greener on the other side of the fence.
10. The truth of many old sayings lies beneath their surfaces.

### Exercise 5

---

1. Some people collect rare coins and paper money.
2. The Del Monte twenty-dollar bill is very famous.
3. The mint made a mistake when it printed this bill.

4. A sticker from a banana accidentally attached itself to the paper during the printing process.
5. The round green and red sticker became a part of the bill.
6. Such mistakes usually lead to a bill's destruction.
7. This flawed note, however, left the mint with the normal twenties.
8. Experts immediately authenticated its rare status.
9. The bill first sold on eBay for \$10,000.
10. Eventually, a couple from Texas paid \$25,000 for this one-of-a-kind note.

Source: [www.delmontenote.com](http://www.delmontenote.com)

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Here is a challenging little exercise. Read the following brief excerpt from a book called *Joey Green's Amazing Kitchen Cures*. This paragraph, which comes from the section on "Air Fresheners," explains that air is not always as clear and empty as we think. Label the parts of speech above as many of the words as you can before checking your answers at the back of the book. Remember that when a noun is used to describe another noun, the first noun plays the part of speech called "adjective."

Air contains aerosols, which are invisible solid particles [that measure] roughly 0.1 micrometer in diameter. These aerosols include dust, sand, volcano and meteor ash, car exhaust, factory smoke, pollen, ocean salt, and microbes. Rain and snow wash many of these aerosols from the air.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences imitating those in Exercises 1–5. Keep your sentences short (under 10 words each), and avoid using "to \_\_\_\_\_" forms of verbs. Label the parts of speech above the words in your imitation sentences. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Adjectives and Adverbs

Two of the eight parts of speech, adjectives and adverbs, are used to *add* information to other words. “To modify” means to change or improve something, usually by adding to it. English has only two kinds of modifiers: adjectives and adverbs. Try to remember that both *adjectives* and *adverbs* *add* information.

### ADJECTIVES

- Adjectives *add to nouns and pronouns* by answering these questions: *Which one? What kind? How much or how many? What size, what color, or what shape?*

adj          n                          adj          n                          adj    adj    adj

She bought a *new* backpack with *multicolored* pockets. It has *one large blue*

n    adj    adj    adj          n                          adj    adj    adj    pro

pocket, *two medium yellow* pockets, and *three small red* ones.

- Adjectives usually come *before the nouns they modify*.

adj    n                                  adj    n                          adj    adj    adj          n

An *oak* tree stands in the *front* yard of *that big green* house.

- However, adjectives can also come *after the nouns they modify*.

n    adj                          adj

The cake, *plain* and *undecorated*, sat in the middle of the table.

- Adjectives may also come *after linking verbs* (is, am, are, was, were, feel, seem, appear, taste, . . .) to add description to the subject. For further discussion of these special verbs, see page 138.

n          lv    adj                          adj

The branches are *sturdy* and *plentiful*.

n    lv    adj                          adj                                  n    lv    adj                          adj

The cake tasted *sweet* and *delicious*. (or) The cake was *sweet* and *delicious*.

- Adjectives can be *forms of nouns and pronouns* that are used to add information to other nouns.

adj          n                                  adj          n                                  adj    adj                          n

The *tree's* owner always trims *its* branches during *his* summer vacation.

adj          n                          adj          n

I love *chocolate* cake for *my* birthday.

## ADVERBS

- Adverbs *add to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs* by answering these questions: *How? In what way? When? Where? Why?*

adv          v                                  adv          v

I *quickly* called my sister, who *sleepily* answered her cell phone.

v    adv          v

She did *not* recognize my voice at first.

adv    adj    n

He wore his *light* blue shirt to the party.

adv          adj    n

It was an *extremely* tall tree.

adv    adj                  adv    adj

Its branches were *very* sturdy and *quite* plentiful.

adv                  adv    adv

People *often* drive *really fast* in the rain.

- Unlike adjectives, some adverbs can move around in sentences without changing the meaning.

adv

*Now* I have enough money for a vacation.

adv

I *now* have enough money for a vacation.

adv

I have enough money *now* for a vacation.

adv

I have enough money for a vacation *now*.

Notice that many—but not all—adverbs end in *ly*. Be aware, however, that adjectives can also end in *ly*. Remember that a word's part of speech is determined by how the word is used in a particular sentence. For instance, in the old saying "The early bird catches the worm," *early* adds to the noun, telling which bird. *Early* is acting as an adjective. However, in the sentence "The teacher arrived early," *early* adds to the verb, telling when the teacher arrived. *Early* is an adverb.

Now that you've read about adjectives and adverbs, try to identify the question that each modifier (adj or adv) answers in the example below. Refer back to the questions listed under Adjectives and Adverbs.

adj    n                                  adj    n          adv                  adv          v

My family and I went to the farmer's market yesterday. We excitedly watched the

adj    adj    n                                  adv          v    adv    adj

decoration of a huge wedding cake. The baker skillfully squeezed out colorful



Food is *expensive*. Gas is *more expensive*. Rent is *most expensive*.

You danced *gracefully*. They danced *less gracefully*. We danced *least gracefully*.

## EXERCISES

Remember that adjectives add to nouns and pronouns, while adverbs add to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. Check your answers frequently.

### Exercise 1

Identify whether each *italicized* word is used as an adjective or an adverb in the sentence.

1. Students in basic English classes *must* enroll in one hour of the writing lab. (adjective, adverb)
2. In the lab, students can work on computers or meet with *writing* tutors. (adjective, adverb)
3. The lab itself is a large room that contains two *separate* areas. (adjective, adverb)
4. The computer area is usually *quiet*, but the tutoring area can be rather noisy. (adjective, adverb)
5. Six or seven sets of students and tutors sit *together* at tables in the tutoring area. (adjective, adverb)
6. In the computer section of the lab, each student works *independently*. (adjective, adverb)
7. For *technical* support, the lab provides roaming assistants to help the students. (adjective, adverb)
8. Students in need of help raise their hands and wait for an *available* assistant to arrive. (adjective, adverb)
9. Students *often* use the Internet as a research tool. (adjective, adverb)
10. Students can also print their *research* results in the writing lab. (adjective, adverb)

**Exercise 2**

---

Identify whether the word *only* is used as an adjective or an adverb in the following sentences. In each sentence, try to link the word *only* with another word to figure out if *only* is an adjective (adding to a noun or pronoun) or an adverb (adding to a verb, adjective, or other adverb). Have fun with this exercise!

1. I have *only* one textbook this semester.
2. As soon as I arrive at school, I reach into my backpack and pull out my *only* textbook.
3. *Only* I have a new copy of the textbook for my biology class.
4. Some students buy *only* used textbooks, not new ones.
5. I buy *only* new textbooks.
6. I am not the *only* one who prefers a new book over a used one.
7. *Only* the students who use new textbooks understand.
8. My best friend buys *only* heavily marked books.
9. She spends *only* a fraction of what I spend.
10. She is the *only* one I know who trusts other students' notes more than her own.

**Exercise 3**

---

Choose the correct adjective or adverb form required to complete each sentence.

1. I have many (close, closely) friends who live in the area.
2. I've discovered that I am (close, closely) related to some important people in history.
3. During hard times, I feel (close, closely) to everyone in my family.
4. My aunt suffered (bad, badly) after her root canal.
5. She felt (bad, badly) about taking pain medication.
6. Her jaw hurt really (bad, badly) for the first two days.
7. Our landlord runs (very happy, very happily) around the park every evening.
8. We are always (very happy, very happily) to have the building to ourselves.
9. I received a (good, well) grade on my paper about fast food.
10. I worked (good, well) with my partner from class.

**Exercise 4**

Choose the correct adjective or adverb form required to complete each sentence.

1. Of all my friends' dogs, Josh's is (small, smaller, the smallest).
2. Diane has (a small, a smaller, the smallest) dog, too.
3. Her dog is (small, smaller, smallest) than mine.
4. Keith bought his phone last week, so it's (a new, a newer, the newest) one.
5. Mine has (new, newer, newest) features than Keith's, but I bought mine a month ago.
6. Jack's phone is (new, newer, newest) than Rohan's.
7. I want a car with (good, better, best) gas mileage than my old one.
8. Of course, tiny cars get (good, better, the best) gas mileage of all.
9. Rohan gets (good, better, best) gas mileage now that his car has new tires.
10. Gas mileage is (important, more important, most important) than it used to be.

**Exercise 5**

Label all of the adjectives (adj) and adverbs (adv) in the following sentences. Mark the ones you are sure of; then check your answers at the back of the book and find the ones you missed.

1. I took a very unusual acting class over the summer.
2. The title of the summer seminar was "Clowning and Physical Acting."
3. It was a special class for students majoring in theater arts.
4. We usually started with warm-up exercises.
5. Then we experimented with unique movements and crazy combinations.
6. Sometimes, we would combine "happy knees" with "curious elbows."
7. Next, we added costume elements, such as padded leggings or strange hats.
8. Some of us transformed into totally unrecognizable characters.
9. I was very happy with my progress as a clown.
10. We learned many valuable skills during our first clown seminar.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Correct the five errors in the use of adjectives and adverbs in the following student paragraph. Then try to label all of the adjectives (adj) and adverbs (adv) in the paragraph for practice.

I didn't do very good during my first semester at community college. I feel badly whenever I think of it. I skipped classes and turned in sloppy work. My counselor warned me about my negative attitude, but I was real stubborn. I dropped out for a year and a half. Now that I have come back to college, I am even stubbornner than before. I go to every class and do my best. Now, a college degree is only my goal.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write a short paragraph (five to seven sentences) describing your favorite subject in grade school or high school. Then go back through the paragraph and label your single-word adjectives and adverbs. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Contractions

When two words are shortened into one, the result is called a *contraction*:

is not .....> isn't                      you have .....> you've

The letter or letters that are left out are replaced with an apostrophe. For example, if the two words *do not* are shortened into one, an apostrophe is put where the second *o* is left out.

do not    don't

Note how the apostrophe goes in the exact place where the letter or letters are left out in these contractions:

I am	I'm
I have	I've
I shall, I will	I'll
I would	I'd
you are	you're
you have	you've
you will	you'll
she is, she has	she's
he is, he has	he's
it is, it has	it's
we are	we're
we have	we've
we will, we shall	we'll
they are	they're
they have	they've
are not	aren't
cannot	can't
do not	don't
does not	doesn't
have not	haven't

let us	let's
who is, who has	who's
where is	where's
were not	weren't
would not	wouldn't
could not	couldn't
should not	shouldn't
would have	would've
could have	could've
should have	should've
that is	that's
there is	there's
what is	what's

One contraction does not follow this rule: *will not* becomes *won't*.

In all other contractions that you're likely to use, the apostrophe goes exactly where the letter or letters are left out. Note especially that *it's*, *they're*, *who's*, and *you're* are contractions. Use them when you mean *two* words. (See p. 43 for more about the possessive forms—*its*, *their*, *whose*, and *your*—which *don't* need apostrophes.)

## EXERCISES

Add the missing apostrophes to any contractions in the following sentences. Then compare your answers with those at the back of the book. Be sure to correct each exercise before going on to the next so you'll catch your mistakes early.

### Exercise 1

---

1. I bet youve never heard of a "geep"; I hadnt either until I read about it in a library book.
2. The geep is an animal thats half goat and half sheep.
3. Its not one that occurs naturally.
4. But a number of geep were produced in the early 1980s.

5. Scientists created this strange beast by combining a goat's cells with a sheep's cells at their earliest stages of development.
6. What many people couldn't believe was that the resulting geep's cells still kept either their goat or sheep qualities intact.
7. Therefore, the geep had long straight goat hair on parts of its body and fluffy sheep's wool on other parts.
8. There's a picture of a geep in the book that I read.
9. It's so weird to look at a goat's head surrounded by curled sheep horns.
10. Let's hope that scientists don't try to make a "cog" or a "dat" in the same way.

*Source: Mysteries of Planet Earth (Carlton Books, 1999)*

## Exercise 2

---

1. "Music wasn't made to make us wise, but better natured." Josh Billings
2. "Give me a laundry list, and I'll set it to music." Rossini
3. "I know only two tunes. One of them is 'Yankee Doodle'—and the other one isn't." Ulysses S. Grant
4. "It's not me. It's the songs. I'm just the postman. I deliver the songs." Bob Dylan
5. "If you think you've hit a false note, sing loud. When in doubt, sing loud." Robert Merrill
6. "I don't know anything about music. In my line, you don't have to." Elvis Presley
7. "If the king loves music, there's little wrong in the land." Mencius
8. "When you got to ask what jazz is, you'll never get to know." Louis Armstrong
9. "I haven't understood a bar of music in my life, but I have felt it." Igor Stravinsky
10. "There are more love songs than anything else. If songs could make you do something, we'd all love one another." Frank Zappa

*Source: Music: A Book of Quotations (Dover, 2001)*

### Exercise 3

---

1. Theres an old tongue twister thats getting a new twist these days.
2. "Fuzzy Wuzzy was a bear. Fuzzy Wuzzy had no hair. Fuzzy Wuzzy wasnt fuzzy, was he?"
3. Some black bears in Florida dont have any hair, and its not funny.
4. The bears' fur has been falling out, and it isnt growing back.
5. The hairless animals dont even look like bears anymore.
6. Without their hair, the bears arent as prepared for cold temperatures.
7. Theyre also prone to scratches on their skin, which is usually protected by fur.
8. Bear experts havent been able to find a cure for the bears' balding.
9. Theyve identified the problem as mange, a condition common to dogs.
10. But theyre not sure why some bears have it while others dont.

*Source: National Geographic News, January 14, 2003*

### Exercise 4

---

1. The new bleachers in the gymnasium arent ready to be used yet.
2. Theyre made of unfinished wood that isnt smooth.
3. This weekend, were all meeting in the gym to paint on the varnish.
4. I hope it doesnt take long for the varnish to dry.
5. I dont know why the boards werent sealed before the bleachers were assembled.
6. Thats one question that nobodys asking.
7. If the planks dont dry in time, our fans wont get to watch our first game on Monday.
8. Of course, therell be more games in the future.
9. However, the first game of the season should be memorable, shouldnt it?
10. Lets hope its not memorable because no one gets to see it.

## Exercise 5

---

1. This week, I'm helping my sister with her research paper, and she's chosen chocolate as her topic.
2. We've been surprised by some of the things we've discovered.
3. First, the cocoa beans aren't very appetizing in their natural form.
4. They grow inside an odd-shaped, alien-looking pod, and they're surrounded by white mushy pulp.
5. After cocoa beans have been removed from the pods, they're dried, blended almost like coffee beans, and processed into the many types of chocolate foods available.
6. In fact, the Aztecs enjoyed chocolate as a heavily spiced hot drink that was more like coffee than the sweet, creamy chocolate that's popular today.
7. We've also learned that white chocolate can't be called chocolate at all since it doesn't contain any cocoa solids, only cocoa butter.
8. With an interest in organic foods, we'd assumed that organic chocolate would be better than conventional chocolate.
9. But that's not true either because it's got to be grown on pesticide-free trees, and they're the strongest but not the tastiest sources of chocolate.
10. Unfortunately, the best cocoa trees are also the most vulnerable to disease, so it isn't easy to grow them organically.

Source: *The Chocolate Companion* (Simon & Schuster, 1995)

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

In the following paragraph, cross out the ten pairs of italicized words and rewrite them as correct contractions (for example, *you are* = *you're*).

*I have* had the same group of friends since I was in junior high school. Now that *we are* all in college, my friends *do not* spend as much time on schoolwork as I do. Whenever *I am* studying for an exam or working on a project, they call and

ask if *I would* like to see a movie or go to a game. *It is* the worst in the summer. *I have* been enrolling in summer school classes for the past two years so that *I will* be ready to transfer soon. However, none of my friends has taken a class during the summer. At the rate *they are* going, my friends *will not* ever transfer.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Doing exercises will help you learn a rule, but even more helpful is using the rule in writing. Write ten sentences using contractions. You might write about your favorite possessions and how you acquired them, or you can choose your own subject. Use your own paper, and keep your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Possessives

Words that clarify ownership are called *possessives*. The trick in writing possessives is to ask the question “Who (or what) does the item belong to?” Modern usage has made *who* acceptable when it begins a question. More correctly, of course, the phrasing should be “*Whom* does the item belong to?” or even “*To whom* does the item belong?”

In any case, if the answer to this question does not end in *s* (e.g., *player*, *person*, *people*, *children*, *month*), simply add an apostrophe and *s* to show the possessive. Look at the first five examples in the following chart.

However, if the answer to the question already ends in *s* (e.g., *players*, *Brahms*), add only an apostrophe after the *s* to show the possessive. See the next two examples in the chart and say them aloud to hear that their sound does not change.

Finally, some *s*-ending words need another sound to make the possessive clear. If you need another *s* sound when you *say* the possessive (e.g., *boss* made possessive is *boss's*), add the apostrophe and another *s* to show the added sound.

a player (uniform)	Whom does the uniform belong to?	a player	Add 's	a player's uniform
a person (clothes)	Whom do the clothes belong to?	a person	Add 's	a person's clothes
people (clothes)	Whom do the clothes belong to?	people	Add 's	people's clothes
children (games)	Whom do the games belong to?	children	Add 's	children's games
a month (pay)	What does the pay belong to?	a month	Add 's	a month's pay
players (uniforms)	Whom do the uniforms belong to?	players	Add '	players' uniforms
Brahms (Lullaby)	Whom does the Lullaby belong to?	Brahms	Add '	Brahms' Lullaby
my boss (office)	Whom does the office belong to?	my boss	Add 's	my boss's office

The trick of asking “Whom does the item belong to?” will always work, but you must ask the question every time. Remember that the key word is *belong*. If you ask the question another way, you may get an answer that won't help you. Also, notice that the trick does not depend on whether the answer is *singular* or *plural*, but on whether it ends in *s* or not.

**TO MAKE A POSSESSIVE**

1. Ask “Whom (or what) does the item belong to?”
2. If the answer doesn’t end in *s*, add an apostrophe and *s*.
3. If the answer already ends in *s*, add just an apostrophe *or* an apostrophe and *s* if you need an extra sound to show the possessive (as in *boss’s office*).

**E X E R C I S E S**

Follow the directions carefully for each of the following exercises. Because possessives can be tricky, we include explanations in some exercises to help you understand them better.

**Exercise 1**

Cover the right column and see if you can write the following possessives correctly. Ask the question “Whom (or what) does the item belong to?” each time. Don’t look at the answer before you try!

- |                            |       |                           |
|----------------------------|-------|---------------------------|
| 1. the children (reaction) | _____ | the children’s reaction   |
| 2. an umpire (decision)    | _____ | an umpire’s decision      |
| 3. Jess (remarks)          | _____ | Jess’s (or Jess’) remarks |
| 4. Alice (company)         | _____ | Alice’s company           |
| 5. the Porters (cat)       | _____ | the Porters’ cat          |
| 6. Ms. Tobias (car)        | _____ | Ms. Tobias’s car          |
| 7. parents (values)        | _____ | parents’ values           |
| 8. a butterfly (wings)     | _____ | a butterfly’s wings       |
| 9. two butterflies (wings) | _____ | two butterflies’ wings    |
| 10. a novel (success)      | _____ | a novel’s success         |

(Sometimes you may have a choice when the word ends in *s*. *Jess’s remarks* may be written *Jess’ remarks*. Whether you want your reader to say it with or without an extra *s* sound, be consistent when given such choices.)

**CAUTION**—Don't assume that every word that ends in *s* is a possessive. The *s* may indicate more than one of something, a plural noun. Make sure the word actually possesses something before you add an apostrophe.

A few commonly used words have their own possessive forms and don't need apostrophes added to them. Memorize this list:

our, ours	its
your, yours	their, theirs
his, her, hers	whose

Note particularly *its*, *their*, *whose*, and *your*. They are already possessive and don't take an apostrophe. (These words sound just like *it's*, *they're*, *who's*, and *you're*, which are *contractions* that use an apostrophe in place of their missing letters.)

## Exercise 2

Cover the right column and see if you can write the required form. The answer might be a *contraction* or a *possessive*. If you miss any, go back and review the explanations.

1. Yes, (that) the one I ordered.	that's
2. (He) saving his money for summer.	He's
3. Does (you) dog bark at night?	your
4. I don't know (who) backpack that is.	whose
5. (You) been summoned for jury duty?	You've
6. My cat is so old that (it) going bald.	it's
7. (They) taking classes together this spring.	They're
8. My car's paint is losing (it) shine.	its
9. We welcomed (they) suggestions.	their
10. (Who) visiting us this weekend?	Who's

**Exercise 3**

Here's another chance to check your progress with possessives. Cover the right column again as you did in Exercises 1 and 2, and add apostrophes correctly to any possessives. Each answer is followed by an explanation.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>1.</b> My twin brothers are members of our schools orchestra.</p>  | <p>school's (You didn't add an apostrophe to <i>brothers</i> or <i>members</i>, did you? The brothers and members don't possess anything.)</p>    |
| <p><b>2.</b> The cashier asked to see my friends identification, too.</p>  | <p>friend's (if it is one friend)<br/>friends' (two or more friends)</p>  |
| <p><b>3.</b> Both mens and womens tennis matches are exciting to watch.</p>  | <p>men's, women's (Did you use the "Whom does it belong to" test?)</p>  |
| <p><b>4.</b> I bought a bad textbook; half of its pages were printed upside down.</p>                                  | <p>No apostrophe. <i>Its</i> needs no apostrophe unless it means "it is" or "it has."</p>   |
| <p><b>5.</b> Julias grades were higher than yours.</p>   | <p>Julia's (<i>Yours</i> is already possessive and doesn't take an apostrophe.)</p>   |
| <p><b>6.</b> I decided to quit my job and gave my boss two weeks notice.</p>   | <p>weeks' (The notice belongs to <i>two weeks</i>, and since <i>weeks</i> ends in <i>s</i>, the apostrophe goes after the <i>s</i>.)</p>          |
| <p><b>7.</b> The Taylors porch light burned out while they were still on vacation.</p>                                 | <p>Taylor's (The light belongs to the Taylors.)</p>   |
| <p><b>8.</b> It is every citizens duty to vote in national elections.</p>  | <p>citizen's (The duty belongs to <i>every citizen</i>, and since <i>citizen</i> doesn't end in <i>s</i>, we add an apostrophe and <i>s</i>.)</p> |
| <p><b>9.</b> The chemistry students evaluated each others results as they cleaned up after the experiment.</p>         | <p>each other's (<i>Students</i> is plural, not possessive.)</p>  |
| <p><b>10.</b> During a long trip, flight attendants attitudes can greatly affect an airline passengers experience.</p> | <p>attendants', passenger's (Did you use the "Whom do they belong to" test?)</p>  |

## Exercises 4 and 5

---

Now you're ready to add apostrophes to the possessives that follow. But be careful. *First*, make sure the word really possesses something; not every word ending in *s* is a possessive. *Second*, remember that certain words already have possessive forms and don't use apostrophes. *Third*, even though a word ends in *s*, you can't tell where the apostrophe goes until you ask the question "Whom (or what) does the item belong to?" The apostrophe or apostrophe and *s* should follow the answer to that question. Check your answers at the back of the book after the first set.

### Exercise 4

---

1. The vampire bats habit of sucking an animals blood is aided by a substance that stops the blood from clotting.
2. This same substance might come to a stroke patients aid very soon.
3. Sometimes a persons brain function becomes blocked by a blood clot.
4. This conditions medical label is "ischemic stroke."
5. Obviously, the vampire bats ability to unclot its victims blood would come in handy.
6. Luckily for stroke patients, the substance would be removed from the bat first.
7. Doctors believe that if stroke patients families could get them to the hospital fast enough, the bats enzyme could reduce the clot to avoid brain damage.
8. The enzymes technical name is DSPA.
9. Researchers have tested DSPAs abilities on mice with great success.
10. Perhaps the vampire bats bad reputation will change with the discovery of its healing powers.

*Source: The American Heart Association's "Stroke Journal Report," January 9, 2003*

### Exercise 5

---

1. The pencils history began in the 1500s.
2. A source of graphite was discovered in one of Englands many valleys.
3. The valleys name was Borrowdale.

4. For hundreds of years, the Borrowdale mine was the worlds main source for pure graphite.
5. Writing with any other form of lead or graphite made an artists or a writers experience less successful.
6. In the late 1700s, Nicolas Jacques Conte learned how to combine graphite and clay to allow manufacturers to vary the hardness of pencils points.
7. After Contes discovery came the mass-production of pencils.
8. The modern pencils yellow color originally had symbolic meanings.
9. The pencils physical design varied over the years, but its hexagonal shape became common.
10. At first, teachers felt that if erasers were added to pencils, their students work would become sloppy.

Source: *Invention & Technology*, Fall 2004

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Only five of the ten italicized words in the following paragraph are possessive and require apostrophes. Find the five possessives, and place the apostrophes correctly.

I have a cat named Shelby who always *keeps* me company when I do my homework. This *cats* favorite spot to lie down is right in the middle of my desk. Whenever she can, Shelby *makes* herself comfortable on top of my actual homework. All of my *classes* handouts have fur all over them. Many people are allergic to *cats* fur, so I wipe off each *days* homework *sheets* before I turn them in to my *teachers*. The noise from *Shelbys* purring *helps* me relax when I'm working on a difficult math problem or starting a new writing assignment.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences using the possessive forms of the names of your family members or the names of your friends. You could write about a recent event that brought your family or friends together. Just tell the story of what happened

that day. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## REVIEW OF CONTRACTIONS AND POSSESSIVES

Here are two review exercises. First, add the necessary apostrophes to the following sentences. Try not to make the mistake of placing an apostrophe where it isn't needed. Don't excuse an error by saying, "Oh, that was just a careless mistake." A mistake is a mistake. Be tough on yourself.

1. According to artist Eric Sloane, it isnt easy to draw or paint clouds.
2. A clouds shape is difficult to capture because its always moving.
3. Clouds arent static bumps that float in the sky.
4. Theyre like living things—constantly building up or disintegrating.
5. Sloanes suggestions for capturing clouds beauty make good sense.
6. Artists shouldnt forget that clouds are "wet air in action."
7. Theyre not solid; theyre transparent.
8. Color choices will affect an artists ability to recreate clouds on paper or canvas.
9. An artist who wants to paint a cloudy sky mustnt rely on blue and white alone.
10. Its better to use gray, yellow, and pink to capture a cloudscapes full effect.

*Source: Skies and the Artist (Dover, 2006)*

Second, add the necessary apostrophes to the following short student essay.

### A Journal of My Own

Ive been keeping a journal ever since I was in high school. I dont write it for my teachers sake. I wouldnt turn it in even if they asked me to. Its mine, and it helps me remember all of the changes Ive gone through so far in my life. The way I see it, a diarys purpose isnt just to record the facts; its to capture my true feelings.

When I record the days events in my journal, they arent written in minute-by-minute details. Instead, if Ive been staying at a friends house for the weekend, Ill write something like this: “Sharons the only friend I have who listens to my whole sentence before starting hers. Shes never in a hurry to end a good conversation. Today we talked for an hour or so about the pets wed had when we were kids. We agreed that were both ‘dog people.’ We cant imagine our lives without dogs. Her favorites are Pomeranians, and mine are golden retrievers.” Thats the kind of an entry Id make in my journal. It doesnt mean much to anyone but me, and thats the way it should be.

I know that another persons diary would be different from mine and that most people dont even keep one. Im glad that writing comes easily to me. I dont think Ill ever stop writing in my journal because it helps me believe in myself and value others beliefs as well.

## Words That Can Be Broken into Parts

Breaking words into their parts will often help you spell them correctly. Each of the following words is made up of two shorter words. Note that the word then contains all the letters of the two shorter words.

chalk board	...	chalkboard	room mate	...	roommate
over due	...	overdue	home work	...	homework
super market	...	supermarket	under line	...	underline

Becoming aware of prefixes such as *dis*, *inter*, *mis*, and *un* is also helpful. When you add a prefix to a word, note that no letters are dropped, either from the prefix or from the word.

dis appear	disappear	mis represent	misrepresent
dis appoint	disappoint	mis spell	misspell
dis approve	disapprove	mis understood	misunderstood
dis satisfy	dissatisfy	un aware	unaware
inter act	interact	un involved	uninvolved
inter active	interactive	un necessary	unnecessary
inter related	interrelated	un sure	unsure

Have someone dictate the preceding list for you to write and then mark any words you miss. Memorize the correct spellings by noting how each word is made up of a prefix and a word.

## Rule for Doubling a Final Letter

Most spelling rules have so many exceptions that they aren't much help. But here's one worth learning because it has very few exceptions.

Double a final letter (consonants only) when adding an ending that begins with a vowel (such as *ing*, *ed*, *er*) if all three of the following are true:

1. The word ends in a single consonant,
2. which is preceded by a single vowel (the vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*),
3. and the accent is on the last syllable (or the word only has one syllable).

We'll try the rule on a few words to which we'll add *ing*, *ed*, or *er*.

*begin*

1. It ends in a single consonant—*n*,
2. preceded by a single vowel—*i*,
3. and the accent is on the last syllable—be *gín*.

Therefore, we double the final consonant and write *beginning*, *beginner*.

*stop*

1. It ends in a single consonant—*p*,
2. preceded by a single vowel—*o*,
3. and the accent is on the last syllable (only one).

Therefore, we double the final consonant and write *stopping*, *stopped*, *stopper*.

*filter*

1. It ends in a single consonant—*r*,
2. preceded by a single vowel—*e*,
3. But the accent isn't on the last syllable. It's on the first—*fil* ter.

Therefore, we don't double the final consonant. We write *filtering*, *filtered*.

*keep*

1. It ends in a single consonant—*p*,
2. but it isn't preceded by a single vowel. There are two *e*'s.

Therefore, we don't double the final consonant. We write *keeping*, *keeper*.

**NOTE 1**—Be aware that *qu* is treated as a consonant because *q* is almost never written without *u*. Think of it as *kw*. In words like *equip* and *quit*, the *qu* acts as a consonant. Therefore, *equip* and *quit* both end in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, and the final consonant is doubled in *equipped* and *quitting*.

**NOTE 2**—The final consonants *w*, *x*, and *y* do not follow this rule and are not doubled when adding *ing*, *ed*, or *er* to a word (as in *bowing*, *fixing*, and *enjoying*).

## EXERCISES

Add *ing* to these words. Correct each group of ten before continuing so you'll catch any errors early.

**Exercise 1**

---

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. bat  | 6. admit |
| 2. quit | 7. slap  |
| 3. wait | 8. think |
| 4. park | 9. tap   |
| 5. skim | 10. hit  |

**Exercise 2**

---

- |           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1. tow    | 6. order    |
| 2. rip    | 7. profit   |
| 3. peel   | 8. scream   |
| 4. refer  | 9. slip     |
| 5. invest | 10. predict |

**Exercise 3**

---

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. box    | 6. cash   |
| 2. munch  | 7. beep   |
| 3. roll   | 8. talk   |
| 4. mop    | 9. travel |
| 5. flavor | 10. play  |

**Exercise 4**

---

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. paint  | 6. press   |
| 2. row    | 7. deal    |
| 3. shiver | 8. knit    |
| 4. defend | 9. blunder |
| 5. trim   | 10. chug   |

**Exercise 5**

---

- |           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. shout  | 6. mix  |
| 2. deploy | 7. drip |
| 3. refer  | 8. send |
| 4. equal  | 9. hem  |
| 5. dig    | 10. tax |

**PROGRESS TEST**

This test covers everything you've studied so far. One sentence in each pair is correct. The other is incorrect. Read both sentences carefully before you decide. Then write the letter of the incorrect sentence in the blank. Try to isolate and correct the error if you can.

1. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Their speeches didn't go very well.  
**B.** They should of practiced more.
2. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Kyle bought a knew phone with his first paycheck.  
**B.** It's got all of the best features.
3. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My teacher complemented me on my attendance.  
**B.** He also said that I have excellent study skills.
4. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My brother misunderstood the advice I gave him.  
**B.** I feel badly whenever I hurt someone's feelings.
5. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The tutors didn't know wear the extra handouts were.  
**B.** We had to look in all of the cabinets.
6. \_\_\_\_ **A.** I recently learned how to drive a motorcycle.  
**B.** Its fun to shift gears.
7. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Our new computer has all ready broken down several times.  
**B.** We're not happy with its performance so far.
8. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My philosophy class has two teachers.  
**B.** I'm learning more from one of them then the other.
9. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Eating a snack before an exam can have positive affects.  
**B.** Food affects the brain's ability to concentrate.
10. \_\_\_\_ **A.** I always except my best friend's advice.  
**B.** She seems to know what's best for me.

## Using a Dictionary

Some dictionaries are more helpful than others. A tiny pocket-sized dictionary or one that fits on a single sheet in your notebook might help you find the spelling of very common words, but for all other uses, you will need a complete, recently published dictionary. Spend some time at a bookstore looking through the dictionaries to find one that you feel comfortable reading. Look up a word that you have had trouble with in the past, and see if you understand the definition. Try looking up the same word in another dictionary and compare.

Complete the following exercises using a good dictionary. Then you will understand what a valuable resource it is.

### 1. Pronunciation

Look up the word *punctuate*, and copy the pronunciation here.

---



---

For help with pronunciation of the syllables, you'll probably find key words at the bottom of one of the two dictionary pages open before you. Note especially that the upside-down *e* (ə) always has the sound of *ub* like the *a* in *ago* or *about*. Remember that sound because it's found in many words.

Slowly pronounce *punctuate*, giving each syllable the same sound as its key word.

Note which syllable has the heavy accent mark. (In most dictionaries, the accent mark points to the stressed syllable, but in others, it is in front of the stressed syllable.) The stressed syllable in *punctuate* is *punc*. Now say the word, letting the full force of your voice fall on that syllable.

When more than one pronunciation is given, the first is preferred. If the complete pronunciation of a word isn't given, look at the word above it to find the pronunciation.

Find the pronunciation of these words, using the key words at the bottom of the dictionary page to help you pronounce each syllable. Then note which syllable has the heavy accent mark, and say the word aloud.

justify          produce          fixate          comprehend

### 2. Definitions

The dictionary may give more than one meaning for a word. Read all the meanings for each italicized word, and then write a definition appropriate to the sentence.

1. Our neighbors taught their dog to *beel*. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. He made himself a cup of *instant* coffee. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. When we *land*, I will call my parents. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. The battery was leaking at one of its *poles*. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 3. Spelling

By making yourself look up each word you aren't sure how to spell, you'll soon become a better speller. When two spellings are given in the dictionary, the first one (or the one with the definition) is preferred.

Use a dictionary to find the preferred spelling for each of these words.

moustache, mustache \_\_\_\_\_ wagon, waggon \_\_\_\_\_

judgement, judgment \_\_\_\_\_ cancelled, canceled \_\_\_\_\_

### 4. Parts of Speech

English has eight parts of speech: noun, pronoun, verb, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection. At the beginning of each definition for a word, you'll find an abbreviation for the part of speech that the word is performing when so defined (n, pron, v, adj, adv, prep, conj, interj). For more discussion of parts of speech, see page 22.

Identify the parts of speech listed in all the definitions for each of the following words.

band \_\_\_\_\_ several \_\_\_\_\_

tank \_\_\_\_\_ during \_\_\_\_\_

## 5. Compound Words

If you want to find out whether two words are written separately, written with a hyphen between them, or written as one word, consult your dictionary. Look at these examples:

half sister	written as two words
father-in-law	hyphenated
stepson	written as one word

Write each of the following as listed in the dictionary (as two words, as a hyphenated word, or as one word):

film maker	_____	draw bridge	_____
play off	_____	in house	_____

## 6. Capitalization

If a word is capitalized in the dictionary, that means it should always be capitalized. If it is not capitalized in the dictionary, then it may or may not be capitalized, depending on how it is used (see p. 198). For example, *American* is always capitalized, but *college* is capitalized or not, according to how it is used.

Last year, she graduated from college.

Last year, she graduated from Monterey Peninsula College.

Write the following words as they're given in the dictionary (with or without a capital) to show whether they must always be capitalized or not. Take a guess before looking them up.

europe	_____	pacific	_____
mars	_____	grammy	_____

## 7. Usage

Just because a word is in the dictionary doesn't mean that it's in standard use. The following labels indicate whether a word is used today and, if so, where and by whom.

obsolete	no longer used
archaic	not currently used in ordinary language but still found in some Biblical, literary, and legal expressions

colloquial, informal	used in informal conversation but not in formal writing
dialectal, regional	used in some localities but not everywhere
slang	popular but nonstandard expression
nonstandard, substandard	not used in Standard Written English

Look up each italicized word and write the label indicating its usage. Dictionaries differ. One may list a word as slang, whereas another will call it colloquial. Still another dictionary may give no designation, thus indicating that it considers the word in standard use.

1. Please *gimme* some of that popcorn. \_\_\_\_\_
2. His *deadpan* delivery of the joke is what made it so funny. \_\_\_\_\_
3. What are the *specs* on that computer? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Our teacher *freaked out* when we said that we needed more time. \_\_\_\_\_
5. *Alas*, the deadline has been postponed. \_\_\_\_\_

## 8. Derivations

The derivations or stories behind words will often help you remember the current meanings. For example, if you read that someone is *narcissistic* and you consult your dictionary, you'll find that *narcissism* is a condition named after Narcissus, who was a handsome young man in Greek mythology. One day, Narcissus fell in love with his own reflection in a pool, but when he tried to get closer to it, he fell in the water and drowned. A flower that grew nearby is now named for Narcissus. And *narcissistic* has come to mean "in love with oneself."

Look up the derivation of each of these words. You'll find it in square brackets either just before or just after the definition.

Murphy bed \_\_\_\_\_

Chihuahua \_\_\_\_\_

goody two-shoes \_\_\_\_\_

silhouette \_\_\_\_\_

## 9. Synonyms

At the end of a definition, a group of synonyms is sometimes given. For example, at the end of the definition of *injure*, you'll find several synonyms, such as *damage* or

*barm*. And if you look up *damage* or *barm*, you'll be referred to the same synonyms listed under *injure*.

List the synonyms given for the following words.

profess \_\_\_\_\_

weep \_\_\_\_\_

dodge \_\_\_\_\_

## 10. Abbreviations

Find the meaning of the following abbreviations.

DVD \_\_\_\_\_ HMO \_\_\_\_\_

UN \_\_\_\_\_ ATM \_\_\_\_\_

## 11. Names of People

The names of famous people will be found either in the main part of your dictionary or in a separate biographical names section at the back.

Identify the following famous people.

Anna Ivanovna \_\_\_\_\_

Gabriel García Marquez \_\_\_\_\_

Grace Hopper \_\_\_\_\_

Frederick Douglass \_\_\_\_\_

## 12. Names of Places

The names of places will be found either in the main part of your dictionary or in a separate geographical names section at the back.

Identify the following places.

Killiecrankie \_\_\_\_\_

Chernobyl \_\_\_\_\_

Mauritius \_\_\_\_\_

Zanzibar \_\_\_\_\_

### 13. Foreign Words and Phrases

Find the language and the meaning of the italicized expressions.

1. The *hors d'oeuvres* at the party were delicious. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I hope to graduate *magna cum laude*. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. My new sheet music said that it should be played *all' ottava*. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Beverly's projects were always considered the *crème de la crème*. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 14. Miscellaneous Information

Find these miscellaneous bits of information in a good dictionary.

1. What duty is a *devil's advocate* supposed to perform? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. In what country would you measure liquid by *mutchkin*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Under what circumstances should someone be given *ipecac*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Is a *macaroon* something to eat or something to wear? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What part of speech is the expression *yoo-hoo*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## P A R T 2

---

# Sentence Structure

Sentence structure refers to the way sentences are built using words, phrases, and clauses. Words are single units, and words link up in sentences to form clauses and phrases. Clauses are word groups *with* subjects and verbs, and phrases are word groups *without* subjects and verbs. Clauses are the most important sentence structures because they make statements—they tell who did what (or what something is) in a sentence. Look at the following sentence for example:

We bought oranges at the farmer’s market on Mission Street.

It contains ten words, each playing its own part in the meaning of the sentence. But which of the words together tell who did what? *We bought oranges* is correct. That word group is a clause. Notice that *at the farmer’s market* and *on Mission Street* also link up as word groups but don’t have somebody (subject) doing something (verb). Instead, they are phrases to clarify *where* we bought the oranges.

Importantly, you could leave out one or both of the phrases and still have a sentence—*We bought oranges*. However, you cannot leave the clause out. Then you would just have *At the farmer’s market on Mission Street*. Remember, every sentence needs at least one clause that can stand by itself.

Learning about the structure of sentences helps you control your own. Once you know more about sentence structure, then you can understand writing errors and learn how to correct them.

Among the most common errors in writing are fragments, run-ons, and awkward phrasing.

Here are some fragments:

Wandering around the zoo all afternoon.

Because I tried to take too many classes at once.

By tutoring the students in groups.

They don't make complete statements—not one has a clause that can stand by itself. Who was *wandering*? What happened *because you tried to take too many classes at once*? What was the result of *tutoring the students in groups*? These incomplete sentence structures fail to communicate a complete thought.

In contrast, here are some run-ons:

Gasoline prices are rising they're definitely too high.

The forecast calls for rain tomorrow I won't wash my car.

A truck parked in front of my driveway and it made me late for school.

Unlike fragments, run-ons make complete statements, but the trouble is they make *two* complete statements; the first *runs on* to the second without correct punctuation. The reader has to go back to see where there should have been a break.

So fragments don't include enough information, and run-ons include too much. Another problem occurs when the information in a sentence just doesn't make sense.

Here are a few sentences with awkward phrasing:

The problem from my grades started to end.

It was a great time at the picnic.

She won me at chess every time we played.

Try to find the word groups that show who did what, that is, the clauses. Once you find them, then try to put the clauses and phrases together to form a precise meaning. It's difficult, isn't it? You'll see that many of the words themselves are misused or unclear, such as *from*, *it*, and *won*. These sentences don't communicate clearly because the clauses, phrases, and even words don't work together. They suffer from awkward phrasing.

Fragments, run-ons, awkward phrasing, and other sentence structure errors confuse the reader. Not until you get rid of them will your writing be clearer and easier to read. Unfortunately, there is no quick, effortless way to learn to avoid errors in sentence structure. First, you need to understand how clear sentences are built. Then you will be able to avoid common errors in your own writing.

This section will describe areas of sentence structure one at a time and then explain how to correct errors associated with the different areas. For instance, we start by helping you find subjects and verbs and understand dependent clauses; then we show you how to avoid fragments. You can go through the whole section yourself to learn all of the concepts and structures. Or your teacher may assign only parts based on errors the class is making.

## Finding Subjects and Verbs

The most important words in sentences are those that make up its independent clause—the subject and the verb. When you write a sentence, you write about a noun or pronoun (a person, place, thing, or idea). That’s the *subject*. Then you write what the subject *does* or *is*. That’s the *verb*.

Lightning strikes.

The word *Lightning* is the thing you are writing about. It’s the subject, and we’ll underline all subjects once. *Strikes* tells what the subject does. It shows the action in the sentence. It’s the verb, and we’ll underline all of them twice. Most sentences do not include only two words (the subject and the verb). However, these two words still make up the core of the sentence even if other words and phrases are included with them.

Lightning strikes back and forth from the clouds to the ground very quickly.

It often strikes people on golf courses or in boats.

When many words appear in sentences, the subject and verb can be harder to find. Because the verb often shows action, it’s easier to spot than the subject. Therefore, always look for it first. For example, take this sentence:

The neighborhood cat folded its paws under its chest.

Which word shows the action? The action word is folded. It’s the verb, so we’ll underline it twice. Now ask yourself who or what folded? The answer is cat. That’s the subject, so we’ll underline it once.

Study the following sentences until you understand how to pick out subjects and verbs:

Tomorrow our school celebrates its fiftieth anniversary. (Which word shows the action? The action word is celebrates. It’s the verb, so we’ll underline it twice. Who or what celebrates? The school does. It’s the subject. We’ll underline it once.)

The team members ate several boxes of chocolates. (Which word shows the action? Ate shows the action. Who or what ate? Members ate.)

Internet users crowd the popular services. (Which word shows the action? The verb is crowd. Who or what crowd? Users crowd.)

Often the verb doesn't show action but merely tells what the subject *is* or *was*. Learn to spot such verbs—*is*, *am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *seems*, *feels*, *appears*, *becomes*, *looks* . . . . (For more information on these special verbs, see the discussion of sentence patterns on p. 137.)

Marshall is a neon artist. (First spot the verb is. Then ask who or what is? Marshall is.)

The bread appears moldy. (First spot the verb appears. Then ask who or what appears? Bread appears.)

Sometimes the subject comes after the verb, especially when a word like *there* or *here* begins the sentence without being a real subject. It's best not to start sentences with "There is . . ." or "There are . . ." for this reason.

In the audience were two reviewers from the *Times*. (Who or what were in the audience? Two reviewers from the *Times* were in the audience.)

There was a fortune-teller at the carnival. (Who or what was there? A fortune-teller was there at the carnival.)

There were name tags for all the participants. (Who or what were there? Name tags were there for all the participants.)

Here are the contracts. (Who or what are here? The contracts are here.)

**NOTE**—Remember that *there* and *here* (as used in the last three sentences) are not subjects. They simply point to something.

In commands, often the subject is not expressed. An unwritten *you* is understood by the reader.

Sit down. (You sit down.)

Place flap A into slot B. (You place flap A into slot B.)

Meet me at 7:00. (You meet me at 7:00.)

Commonly, a sentence may have more than one subject.

Toys and memorabilia from the 1950s–1980s are high-priced collectibles.

Celebrity dolls, board games, and even cereal boxes from those decades line the shelves of antique stores.

A sentence may also have more than one verb.

Water boils at a certain temperature and freezes at another.

The ice tray fell out of my hand, skidded across the floor, and landed under the table.

## E X E R C I S E S

Underline the subjects once and the verbs twice in the following sentences. When you've finished the first set, compare your answers carefully with those at the back of the book.

### Exercise 1

---

1. My savings account recently reached a comfortable level.
2. With part of my savings, I bought a new computer.
3. I received a free printer with my computer.
4. Then I discovered the high prices of printer supplies.
5. I never buy heavy-duty paper for my printer.
6. Recycled paper costs less and comes in many different colors.
7. Sometimes I even print on both sides of the paper.
8. Toner cartridges for my printer are especially expensive.
9. Luckily, there is a postage-paid envelope inside each cartridge box for recycling.
10. Some stores also accept empty toner cartridges for a small rebate.

### Exercise 2

---

1. The summer heat causes many problems for people.
2. Food spoils more quickly in the summer.
3. Insects and other pests seek shelter inside.

4. There are power outages due to excessive use of air conditioners and fans.
5. In some areas, smog levels increase dramatically in the summer.
6. Schoolchildren suffer in overheated classrooms.
7. On the worst days, everyone searches for a swimming pool or drives to the beach.
8. Sleeping comfortably becomes impossible.
9. No activity seems worth the effort.
10. But the heat of summer fades in our minds at the first real break in the weather.

### Exercise 3

---

1. Katharine M. Rogers recently published her biography of L. Frank Baum.
2. Most people know Baum's work but not his name.
3. L. Frank Baum wrote *The Wonderful Wizard of Oz* and many other children's books and stories.
4. Of course, filmmakers used Baum's tale of the Wizard of Oz in the classic movie of the same name.
5. Baum's memorable character of the Scarecrow has an interesting story behind him.
6. During Baum's childhood, his father bought some farmland.
7. Baum saw scarecrows in the fields and found them fascinating.
8. Unfortunately, his keen imagination led to bad dreams about a scarecrow.
9. The scarecrow in his dreams ran after him but always fell into a heap of straw just in time.
10. As a writer, Baum brought the Scarecrow to life in his Oz stories and made him less of a nightmare and more of a friend.

## Exercise 4

---

1. In 1940, four teenagers took a walk and discovered something marvelous.
2. They entered an underground cavern in Lascaux, France, and found vivid images of animals on its walls.
3. There were horses, deer, bulls, cats, and oxen.
4. The prehistoric artists also left tracings of their handprints on the walls.
5. Scientists dated the paintings and engravings at approximately 17,000 years old.
6. After its discovery, the Lascaux cave became a popular tourist attraction.
7. Twelve hundred people visited the site daily.
8. These visitors had a negative impact on the cave's prehistoric artwork.
9. They breathed carbon dioxide into the cave and increased its humidity.
10. French officials closed the Lascaux cave to the public in 1963.

Sources: *The Cave of Lascaux* official Web site (<http://www.culture.gouv.fr:80/culture/arcnat/lascaux/en/>)

## Exercise 5

---

1. Movies and television programs often include real dogs as actors.
2. Disney's live-action *101 Dalmatians* is just one example.
3. *Snow Dogs*, *Eight Below*, and *The Shaggy Dog* are three other dog-friendly films.
4. According to experts, dogs in films both help and hurt certain dog breeds.
5. For instance, sales and adoptions of Dalmatians rose dramatically after the Disney movie's popularity.
6. The other films caused the same effect for Siberian huskies and bearded collies.
7. However, these breeds are not good choices for everyone.
8. Many people become unhappy with them and put them up for adoption.

9. Disney now attaches warning labels to their DVDs of dog-related films.
10. The labels caution the public about the choice of dogs based on their movie roles.

*Source: Newsweek, August 14, 2006*

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Underline the subjects once and the verbs twice in the following student paragraph.

I was on the volleyball team in high school, so my high school gym was a special place for me. It was an ordinary gym with bleachers on both sides. There were basketball court lines on the floors and the school's mascot in the center. We stretched a net across the middle for our volleyball games. The pale wooden floors sparkled, sometimes with sweat and sometimes with tears. The gym had a distinct stuffy smell of grimy socks, stale potato chips, and sticky sodas. I liked the smell and remember it fondly. Songs from dances and screams and cheers from games echoed throughout the big old building. In the gym during those high school years, I felt a sense of privacy and community.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences about any subject—your favorite movie snacks, for instance. Keeping your subject matter simple in these sentence-writing exercises will make it easier to find your sentence structures later. After you have written your sentences, go back and underline your subjects once and your verbs twice. Use your own paper, and keep your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Locating Prepositional Phrases

Prepositional phrases are among the easiest structures in English to learn. Remember that a phrase is just a group of related words (at least two) without a subject and a verb. And don't let a term like *prepositional* scare you. If you look in the middle of that long word, you'll find a familiar one—*position*. In English, we tell the *positions* of people and things in sentences using prepositional phrases.

Look at the following sentence with its prepositional phrases in parentheses:

Our field trip (to the desert) begins (at 6:00) (in the morning) (on Friday).

One phrase tells where the field trip is going (*to the desert*), and three phrases tell when the trip begins (*at 6:00*, *in the morning*, and *on Friday*). As you can see, prepositional phrases show the position of someone or something in space or in time.

Here is a list of some prepositions that can show positions in space:

under	across	next to	against
around	by	inside	at
through	beyond	over	beneath
above	among	on	in
below	near	behind	past
between	with	from	to

Here are some prepositions that can show positions in time:

before	throughout	past	within
after	by	until	in
since	at	during	for

These lists include only individual words, *not phrases*. Remember, a preposition must be followed by a noun or pronoun object—a person, place, thing, or idea—to create a prepositional phrase. Notice that in the added prepositional phrases that follow, the position of the balloon in relation to the object, *the clouds*, changes completely.

The hot-air balloon floated *above the clouds*.  
*below the clouds*.  
*within the clouds*.  
*between the clouds*.  
*past the clouds*.  
*around the clouds*.

Now notice the different positions in time:

The balloon landed *at 3:30.*  
*by 3:30.*  
*past 3:30.*  
*before the thunderstorm.*  
*during the thunderstorm.*  
*after the thunderstorm.*

**NOTE**—A few words—*of*, *as*, and *like*—are prepositions that do not fit neatly into either the space or time category, yet they are very common prepositions (box *of* candy, note *of* apology, type *of* bicycle; act *as* a substitute, use *as* an example, testified *as* an expert; sounds *like* a computer; acts *like* a child, moves *like* a snake).

By locating prepositional phrases, you will be able to find subjects and verbs more easily. For example, you might have difficulty finding the subject and verb in a long sentence like this:

During the rainy season, one of the windows in the attic leaked at the corners of its molding.

But if you put parentheses around all the prepositional phrases like this

(During the rainy season), one (of the windows) (in the attic) leaked (at the corners) (of its molding).

then you have only two words left—the subject and the verb. Even in short sentences like the following, you might pick the wrong word as the subject if you don't put parentheses around the prepositional phrases first.

Two (of the characters) lied (to each other) (throughout the play).

The waves (around the ship) looked real.

**NOTE**—Don't mistake *to* plus a verb for a prepositional phrase. Special forms of verbals always start with *to*, but they are not prepositional phrases (see p. 126). For example, in the sentence "I like to run to the beach," *to run* is a verbal, not a prepositional phrase. However, *to the beach* is a prepositional phrase because it begins with a preposition (*to*), ends with a noun (*beach*), and shows position in space.

## EXERCISES

Put parentheses around the prepositional phrases in the following sentences. Be sure to start with the preposition itself (*in, on, to, at, of . . .*) and include the word or words that go with it (*in the morning, on our sidewalk, to Hawaii . . .*). Then underline the sentences' subjects once and verbs twice. Remember that subjects and verbs are not found inside prepositional phrases, so if you locate the prepositional phrases *first*, the subjects and verbs will be much easier to find. Check your answers at the back after each set of ten sentences before continuing.

### Exercise 1

---

1. My college counselor has an office in the registration building.
2. I meet with her at the beginning of each new school year.
3. She works with me on my schedule.
4. We discuss my plans for future semesters at the college.
5. She makes suggestions about the best strategy for me at the time.
6. Sometimes I am lucky and find a space in all of the right classes.
7. At other times, I register late and end up on waiting lists.
8. Classes with prerequisites fill more slowly than those without prerequisites.
9. Luckily, now I meet the prerequisites for a lot of important classes.
10. Without the advice of my counselor, I definitely feel lost.

### Exercise 2

---

1. Everyone worries about identity theft.
2. Thieves search for certain pieces of information.
3. These facts are names, addresses, dates of birth, and social security numbers.
4. With these facts, thieves attempt to access people's accounts.
5. There are some new forms of protection on the Internet.
6. One program checks the Web for groupings of people's most valuable information.

7. The name of the program is Identity Angel.
8. Carnegie Mellon University in Pittsburgh created the program.
9. Identity Angel sends e-mail warnings to vulnerable people.
10. It warns them about possible identity theft.

*Source: CNET News.com, August 10, 2006*

### Exercise 3

---

1. One fact about William Shakespeare and his work always surprises people.
2. There are no copies of his original manuscripts.
3. No museum or library has even one page from a Shakespeare play in Shakespeare's own handwriting.
4. Museums and libraries have copies of the First Folio instead.
5. After Shakespeare's death in 1616, actors from his company gathered the texts of his plays and published them as one book, the First Folio, in 1623.
6. They printed approximately 750 copies at the time.
7. Currently, there are 230 known copies of the First Folio in the world.
8. Many owners of the Folio remain anonymous by choice.
9. One woman inherited her copy of the Folio from a distant relative.
10. Another copy of the First Folio recently sold for five million dollars.

*Source: Smithsonian, September 2006*

### Exercise 4

---

1. Twiggy the Squirrel is a star in the world of trained animals.
2. Twiggy performs on a pair of tiny water skis and delights crowds at boat shows and other events.
3. Like many other famous animal entertainers, the current Twiggy is not the original.
4. The Twiggy of today is fifth in the line of Twiggys.

5. Lou Ann Best is Twiggy's trainer and continues the work begun by her husband Chuck during the 1970s.
6. In his time, Chuck Best convinced many types of animals to ride on water skis.
7. He had success with everything from a dog to a frog.
8. But Twiggy the Squirrel was a hit with crowds from the beginning.
9. All of the Twiggy's seemed happy with their show-biz lifestyles.
10. In fact, the Bests received four of the Twiggy's from the Humane Society.

*Source: Current Science, May 2, 2003*

## Exercise 5

---

1. At 2 A.M. on the second Sunday in March, something happens to nearly everyone in America: Daylight Saving Time.
2. But few people are awake at two in the morning.
3. So we set the hands or digits of our clocks ahead one hour on Saturday night in preparation for it.
4. And before bed on the first Saturday in November, we turn them back again.
5. For days after both events, I have trouble with my sleep patterns and my mood.
6. In spring, the feeling is one of loss.
7. That Saturday-night sleep into Sunday is one hour shorter than usual.
8. But in fall, I gain a false sense of security about time.
9. That endless Sunday morning quickly melts into the start of a hectic week like the other fifty-one in the year.
10. All of this upheaval is due to the Uniform Time Act of 1966.

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Put parentheses around the prepositional phrases in this modified excerpt from *A Day in a Medieval City*, by Chiara Frugoni.

A whole collection of clay toys was discovered during the nineteenth century in Strasbourgh, in the workshop of a thirteenth-century potter. Since then, we know more about medieval children’s games: bird-shaped whistles, miniature tiles and pitchers, tiny moneyboxes, little dolls, and diminutive horses with riders on their backs. Children fought battles with wooden swords, competed in play tournaments, played games with balls and wooden sticks in a remote precursor to modern field hockey.

In families with more means, there were “educational toys,” such as an alphabet wheel in gesso from the fourteenth century or a covered pewter cup decorated with the entire alphabet. The letter A, the first the child would pronounce, is on the knob. We find out about the instruction of children primarily from images of family life.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences describing your favorite type of vacation—or choose any topic you like. When you go back over your sentences, put parentheses around your prepositional phrases and underline your subjects once and your verbs twice. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Understanding Dependent Clauses

All clauses contain a subject and a verb, yet there are two kinds of clauses: *independent* and *dependent*. Independent clauses have a subject and a verb and make complete statements by themselves. Dependent clauses have a subject and a verb but don't make complete statements because of the words they begin with. Here are some of the words (conjunctions) that begin dependent clauses:

after	since	where
although	so that	whereas
as	than	wherever
as if	that	whether
because	though	which
before	unless	whichever
even if	until	while
even though	what	who
ever since	whatever	whom
how	when	whose
if	whenever	why

When a clause starts with one of these dependent words, it is usually a dependent clause. To see the difference between an independent and a dependent clause, look at this example of an independent clause:

We ate dinner together.

It has a subject (We) and a verb (ate), and it makes a complete statement. But as soon as we put one of the dependent words in front of it, the clause becomes *dependent* because it no longer makes a complete statement:

*After* we ate dinner together . . .

*Although* we ate dinner together . . .

*As* we ate dinner together . . .

*Before* we ate dinner together . . .

*Since* we ate dinner together . . .

*That* we ate dinner together . . .

*When* we ate dinner together . . .

*While* we ate dinner together . . .

Each of these dependent clauses leaves the reader expecting something more. Each would depend on another clause—an independent clause—to make a sentence. For the rest of this discussion, we'll place a broken line beneath dependent clauses.

After we ate dinner together, we went to the evening seminar.

We went to the evening seminar after we ate dinner together.

The speaker didn't know that we ate dinner together.

While we ate dinner together, the restaurant became crowded.

As you can see in these examples, *when a dependent clause comes before an independent clause, it is followed by a comma*. Often the comma prevents misreading, as in the following sentence:

When he returned, the DVD was on the floor.

Without a comma after *returned*, the reader would read *When he returned the DVD* before realizing that this was not what the author meant. The comma prevents misreading. Sometimes if the dependent clause is short and there is no danger of misreading, the comma can be left off, but it's safer simply to follow the rule that a dependent clause coming before an independent clause is followed by a comma. You'll learn more about the punctuation of dependent clauses on page 177, but right now just remember the previous rule.

Note that a few of the dependent words (*that, who, which, what*) can do "double duty" as both the dependent word and the subject of the dependent clause:

Thelma wrote a poetry book that sold a thousand copies.

The manager saw what happened.

Sometimes the dependent clause is in the middle of the independent clause:

The book that sold a thousand copies was Thelma's.

The events that followed the parade delighted everyone.

The dependent clause can even be the subject of the entire sentence:

What you do also affects me.

How your project looks counts for ten percent of the grade.

Also note that sometimes the *that* of a dependent clause is omitted:

I know that you feel strongly about this issue.

I know you feel strongly about this issue.

Everyone received the classes that they wanted.

Everyone received the classes they wanted.

Of course, the word *that* doesn't always introduce a dependent clause. It may be a pronoun and serve as the subject or object of the sentence:

That was a long movie.

We knew that already.

*That* can also be an adjective, a descriptive word telling *which one*:

That movie always makes me laugh.

We took them to that park last week.

## EXERCISES

### Exercise 1

Each of the following sentences contains *one* independent and *one* dependent clause. Draw a broken line beneath the dependent clause in each sentence. Start at the dependent word and include all the words that go with it. Remember that dependent clauses can be in the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence.

Example: I jump whenever I hear a loud noise.

1. Edgar and Nina Otto, who live in Florida, were the winning bidders in an unusual auction in 2008.
2. Whoever placed the highest bid won the opportunity of a lifetime: a chance to clone their dog.
3. The company that held the auction and provided the service was BioArts International.
4. The Ottos wanted to clone Sir Lancelot, a yellow Labrador that died in 2008.
5. The price that they paid exceeded \$150,000.
6. Once the auction ended, the scientists at BioArts went to work.
7. They used the DNA that the Ottos saved from Sir Lancelot to produce a genetic match.
8. The complex process, which took place in South Korea, yielded an adorable puppy.
9. The puppy looked so much like Sir Lancelot that the company named him Encore Lancelot, Lancey for short.
10. At the first meeting with their new dog in January of 2009, the Ottos were overjoyed that Lancey walked with crossed feet, just like Sir Lancelot.

Source: [www.bioarts.com](http://www.bioarts.com) (press release)

### Exercises 2–5

---

Follow the same directions as in Exercise 1. Then, after you identify the dependent clauses, go back to both the independent and dependent clauses and mark their subjects and verbs. Draw a single underline beneath subjects and a double underline beneath verbs.

Example: I jump whenever I hear a loud noise.

### Exercise 2

---

1. When I was on vacation in New York City, I loved the look of the Empire State Building at night.

2. I thought that the colored lights at the top of this landmark were just decorative.
3. I did not know that their patterns also have meaning.
4. While I waited at the airport, I read a pamphlet about the patterns.
5. Some of the light combinations reveal connections that are obvious.
6. For instance, if the occasion is St. Patrick's Day, the top of the building glows with green lights.
7. When the holiday involves a celebration of America, the three levels of lights shine red, white, and blue.
8. There are other combinations that are less well known.
9. Red-black-green is a pattern that signals Martin Luther King Jr. Day.
10. Whenever I visit the city again, I'll know the meanings of the lights on the Empire State Building.

### Exercise 3

---

1. When people shop for high-priced items, they often think too much.
2. A study at the University of Amsterdam yielded results that surprised scientists.
3. If buyers thought only a little bit beforehand, they remained happy with their purchase later.
4. When they consciously considered many details about a product, they were not as satisfied with it afterward.
5. The products that researchers used in the experiments were cars and furniture.
6. For the car-buying study, they tested eighty people who were all college students.
7. The cars had many positive and negative attributes for the subjects to consider when they made their choices.
8. The subjects who took the least amount of time chose the best cars.

9. Likewise, a survey of furniture shoppers showed that quick decisions led to satisfied customers.
10. Apparently, shoppers who trust their instincts make the best decisions.

Source: *Science News*, February 25, 2006

#### Exercise 4

---

1. Did you know that July is National Cell Phone Courtesy Month?
2. There are few cell phone users who are courteous in public.
3. In fact, courtesy is almost impossible when someone uses a cell phone around others.
4. People who have cell phones set their ring tones on high and have loud conversations.
5. Even if they are in stores, restaurants, or libraries, cell phone users answer most of their calls.
6. The question remains about how cell phone users can be more courteous.
7. One solution is a new type of phone booth that has no phone in it.
8. It is a structure that has a cylindrical shape and a metal exterior.
9. There is a door that callers use for privacy.
10. The cell phone booth is an old-fashioned idea that makes a lot of sense.

Source: *Newsweek*, July 3/July 10, 2006

#### Exercise 5

---

1. I just read an article with a list of "What Doctors Wish You Knew."
2. One fact is that red and blue fruits are the healthiest.
3. Patients who have doctor's appointments after lunchtime spend less time in the waiting room.
4. Drivers who apply more sunscreen to their left sides get less skin cancer.
5. People who take ten deep breaths in the morning and evening feel less stress.

6. A clock that is visible from the bed makes insomnia worse.
7. People often suffer from weekend headaches because they get up too late.
8. They withdraw from caffeine by skipping the coffee that they usually drink on workdays.
9. Doctors suggest that people maintain weekday hours on weekends.
10. I am glad that I found this list.

Source: *Good Housekeeping*, November 2005

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Underline the subjects once, the verbs twice, and draw a broken line beneath the dependent clauses in this brief excerpt from *The Handy History Answer Book*.

Today experts disagree over the impact of television on our lives. Some argue that increased crime is a direct outcome of television since programs show crime as an everyday event and since advertisements make people aware of what they don't have. Critics also maintain that television stimulates aggressive behavior, reinforces ethnic stereotyping, and leads to a decrease in activity and creativity. Proponents of television counter [when they cite] increased awareness in world events, improved verbal abilities, and greater curiosity as benefits of television viewing.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences about your own relationship with television—the patterns or routines that have developed from your choice of watching or not watching TV. Try to write sentences that have both independent and dependent clauses. Then underline the subjects once, the verbs twice, and put a broken line under the dependent clauses. Use your own paper, and save all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Correcting Fragments

Sometimes a group of words looks like a sentence—with a capital letter at the beginning and a period at the end—but it may be missing a subject or a verb or both. Such incomplete sentence structures are called *fragments*. Here are a few examples:

Just ran around with his arms in the air. (*Who* did? There is no subject.)

Paul and his sister with the twins. (*Did* what? There is no verb.)

Nothing to do at night. (This fragment is missing a subject and a real verb. *To do* is a verbal, see p. 126.)

To change these fragments into sentences, we must make sure each has a subject and a real verb:

The lottery winner just ran around with his arms in the air. (We added a subject.)

Paul and his sister with the twins reconciled. (We added a verb.)

The jurors had nothing to do at night. (We added a subject and a real verb.)

Sometimes we can simply attach such a fragment to the previous sentence.

I want a fulfilling career. Teaching, for example. (fragment)

I want a fulfilling career—teaching, for example. (correction)

Or we can add a subject or a verb to the fragment and make it a complete sentence.

I want a fulfilling career. Teaching is one example.

### PHRASE FRAGMENTS

By definition, phrases are word groups without subjects and verbs, so whenever a phrase is punctuated as a sentence, it is a fragment. Look at this example of a sentence followed by a phrase fragment beginning with *hoping* (see p. 126 for more about verbal phrases):

The actors waited outside the director's office. Hoping for a chance to audition.

We can correct this fragment by attaching it to the previous sentence.

The actors waited outside the director's office, hoping for a chance to audition.

Or we can change it to include a subject and a real verb.

The actors waited outside the director's office. They hoped for a chance to audition.

Here's another example of a sentence followed by a phrase fragment:

Language classes are difficult. Especially when taken in summer school.

Here the two have been combined into one complete sentence:

Language classes taken in summer school are especially difficult.

Or a better revision might be

Language classes are especially difficult when taken in summer school.

Sometimes, prepositional phrases are also incorrectly punctuated as sentences. Here a prepositional phrase follows a sentence, but the word group is a fragment—it has no subject and verb of its own. Therefore, it needs to be corrected.

I live a simple life. With my family on our farm in central California.

Here is one possible correction:

I live a simple life with my family on our farm in central California.

Or it could be corrected this way:

My family and I live a simple life on our farm in central California.

### DEPENDENT CLAUSE FRAGMENTS

A dependent clause punctuated as a sentence is another kind of fragment. A sentence needs a subject, a verb, *and* a complete thought. As discussed in the previous section, a dependent clause has a subject and a verb, but it begins with a word that makes its meaning incomplete, such as *after*, *while*, *because*, *since*, *although*, *when*, *if*, *where*, *who*, *which*, and *that*. (See p. 73 for a longer list of these words.) To correct such fragments, we need to eliminate the word that makes the clause dependent *or* add an independent clause.

### Fragment

While some of us wrote in our journals.

### Corrected

Some of us wrote in our journals.

or

While some of us wrote in our journals, the fire alarm rang.

### Fragment

Which kept me from finishing my journal entry.

### Corrected

The fire alarm kept me from finishing my journal entry.

or

We responded to the fire alarm, which kept me from finishing my journal entry.

Are fragments ever permissible? Professional writers sometimes use fragments in advertising and other kinds of writing. But professional writers use these fragments intentionally, not in error. Until you're an experienced writer, it's best to write complete sentences. Especially in college writing, you should avoid using fragments.

## EXERCISES

Some of the following word groups are sentences, and some are fragments. The sentences include subjects and verbs and make complete statements. Write the word "correct" next to each of the sentences. Then change the fragments into sentences by making sure that each has a subject, a real verb, and a complete thought.

### Exercise 1

---

1. Restaurants play a large role in people's lives.
2. Many people wanting to eat lighter meals and waste less food.
3. Some recent changes in the types of food at restaurants.

4. Including healthier menu options for everyone.
5. Options for vegetarians and people on low-carb diets.
6. Even fast-food restaurants offer more choices than they did before.
7. Children's meals with fruit instead of fries.
8. Milk and water available instead of soda.
9. Large restaurants now serve smaller portions, too.
10. All of these changes being positive steps toward a healthier, leaner lifestyle.

## Exercise 2

---

1. I read an article about bananas for my health class in high school.
2. That bananas are in danger of extinction in the near future.
3. Due to a crop disease that infects the banana plants' leaves.
4. The disease makes the bananas get ripe too fast.
5. All of the kinds of bananas that people eat are at risk.
6. Some banana experts warning about no more bananas to eat.
7. No banana cream pies, banana splits, banana muffins, or banana bread.
8. Such an idea is new to a lot of us.
9. Most people never think about plant extinction.
10. Chocolate and coffee similar scares in the past.

## Exercise 3

---

Each pair contains one sentence and one phrase fragment. Correct each phrase fragment by attaching the phrase to the complete sentence before or after it.

1. A worker at the Smithsonian discovered an important historical object.  
On a shelf in one of the museum's storage rooms.
2. Made of cardboard and covered with short, smooth fur. It was a tall black top hat.
3. The hat didn't look like anything special. More like an old costume or prop.

4. It was special, however. Having been worn by Abraham Lincoln on the night of his assassination.
5. Once found and identified, Lincoln's hat traveled with the 150th anniversary exhibition. Called "America's Smithsonian."
6. For such a priceless object to be able to travel around the country safely. Experts needed to build a unique display case for Lincoln's top hat.
7. The design allowed visitors to view the famous stovepipe hat. Without damaging it with their breath or hands.
8. The hat traveled in a sealed box. Designed against even earthquakes.
9. Keeping the hat earthquake-proof was an important concern. Being on display in California for part of the time.
10. President Lincoln's hat is one of the most impressive. Among the millions of objects in the archives of the Smithsonian.

Source: *Saving Stuff* (Fireside, 2005)

#### Exercise 4

---

Each pair contains one sentence and one dependent clause fragment. Correct each dependent clause fragment by eliminating its dependent word or by attaching the dependent clause to the independent clause before or after it.

1. When Nathan King turned twelve. He had a heart-stopping experience.
2. Nathan was tossing a football against his bedroom wall. Which made the ball ricochet and land on his bed.
3. In a diving motion, Nathan fell on his bed to catch the ball. As it landed.
4. After he caught the ball. Nathan felt a strange sensation in his chest.
5. To his surprise, he looked down and saw the eraser end of a no. 2 pencil. That had pierced his chest and entered his heart.
6. Nathan immediately shouted for his mother. Who luckily was in the house at the time.
7. Because Nathan's mom is a nurse. She knew not to remove the pencil.
8. If she had pulled the pencil out of her son's chest. He would have died.

9. After Nathan was taken to a hospital equipped for open-heart surgery. He had the pencil carefully removed.
10. Fate may be partly responsible for Nathan's happy birthday story. Since it turned out to be his heart surgeon's birthday too.

Source: *Time*, March 20, 2000

### Exercise 5

---

All of the following word groups are individual fragments punctuated as sentences. Make the necessary changes to turn each fragment into a sentence that makes sense to you. Your corrections will most likely differ from the sample answers at the back of the book. But by comparing your answers to ours, you'll see that there are many ways to correct a fragment.

1. One of the people sitting next to me on the train.
2. Before intermission, the movie that seemed endless.
3. Before the paint was dry in the classrooms.
4. The judge's question and the answer it received.
5. Because there were fewer students in the program this year.
6. Since his speech lasted for over an hour.
7. Whenever the teacher reminds us about the midterm exam.
8. If we move to Kentucky and stay for two years.
9. As soon as the order form reaches the warehouse.
10. Buildings with odd shapes always of interest to me.

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Correct the five fragments in the following paragraph.

I love fireworks shows. Backyard displays or huge Fourth of July events. When the whole sky lights up with color and booms with noise. In fact, I have a dream to become a fireworks expert. If I could take a class in pyrotechnics right now, I would. Instead, I have to take general education classes. Like English, math, and psychology. Maybe an appointment with a career counselor would be a

good idea. To help me find the right school. With a training program in fireworks preparation.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten fragments (like the ones in Exercise 5) and then revise them so that they are complete sentences. Or exchange papers with another student and turn your classmate's ten fragments into sentences. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Correcting Run-on Sentences

A word group with a subject and a verb is a clause. As we have seen, the clause may be independent (making a complete statement and able to stand alone as a sentence), or it may be dependent (beginning with a dependent word and unable to stand alone as a sentence). When two *independent* clauses are written together without proper punctuation between them, the result is called a *run-on sentence*. Here are some examples.

World music offers a lot of variety I listen to it in my car.

I love the sound of drums therefore, bhangra is one of my favorite styles.

Run-on sentences can be corrected in one of four ways:

### 1. Make the two independent clauses into two sentences.

World music offers a lot of variety. I listen to it in my car.

I love the sound of drums. Therefore, bhangra is one of my favorite styles.

### 2. Connect the two independent clauses with a semicolon.

World music offers a lot of variety; I listen to it in my car.

I love the sound of drums; therefore, bhangra is one of my favorite styles.

When a connecting word (transition) such as

also	however	otherwise
consequently	likewise	then
finally	moreover	therefore
furthermore	nevertheless	thus

is used to join two independent clauses, the semicolon comes before the connecting word, and a comma usually comes after it.

Cell phones are essential; however, they are very expensive.

Earthquakes scare me; therefore, I don't live in Seattle.

Yasmin traveled to London; then she took the "Chunnel" to Paris.

The college recently built a large new library; thus we have better study areas.

**NOTE**—The use of the comma after the connecting word depends on how long the connecting word is. If it is only a short word, like *then* or *thus*, the comma is not necessary.

**3. Connect the two independent clauses with a comma and one of the following seven words (the first letters of which create the word *fanboys*): *for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so*.**

World music offers a lot of variety, *so* I listen to it in my car.

Bhangra is one of my favorite styles, *for* I love the sound of drums.

Each of the *fanboys* has its own meaning. For example, *so* means “as a result,” and *for* means “because.”

Swans are beautiful birds, *and* they mate for life.

Students may sign up for classes in person, *or* they may register online.

I applied for financial aid, *but* I am still working.

Brian doesn't have a cell phone, *nor* does he plan to get one.

Before you put a comma before a *fanboys*, be sure there are two independent clauses. Note that the first sentence that follows has two independent clauses. However, the second sentence contains just one clause with two verbs and therefore needs no comma.

The snow began to fall at dusk, and it continued to fall through the night.

The snow began to fall at dusk and continued to fall through the night.

**4. Make one of the clauses dependent by adding a dependent word, such as *since, when, as, after, while, or because*. See p. 73 for a longer list of these words.**

*Since* world music offers a lot of variety, I listen to it in my car.

Bhangra is one of my favorite styles *because* I love the sound of drums.

Learn these ways to join two clauses, and you'll avoid run-on sentences.

## WAYS TO CORRECT RUN-ON SENTENCES

They were learning a new song. They needed to practice. (two sentences)

They were learning a new song; they needed to practice. (semicolon)

They were learning a new song; therefore, they needed to practice. (semicolon + transition)

They were learning a new song, so they needed to practice. (comma + *fanboys*)

Because they were learning a new song, they needed to practice. (dependent clause first)

They needed to practice because they were learning a new song. (dependent clause last)

## EXERCISES

### Exercises 1 and 2

#### CORRECTING RUN-ONS WITH PUNCTUATION

Some of the following sentences are run-ons. If the sentence has two independent clauses, separate them with correct punctuation. Use only a period, a semicolon, or a comma to separate the two independent clauses. Remember to capitalize after a period and to insert a comma only when the words *for*, *and*, *nor*, *but*, *or*, *yet*, or *so* are already used to join the two independent clauses.

#### Exercise 1

1. I read an essay last night but I can't remember its title.
2. It was about a writer who lived with his aunt and she had an intense fear of lightning.
3. At first, the writer didn't share his aunt's fear he thought it was unfounded.
4. He watched her take extreme precautions against lightning strikes for instance, she often sat on one raincoat and covered her head with another to avoid contact with the ground or air.

5. She firmly believed that rubber was the only safe material to touch during such storms.
6. One common household object was the source of her worst lightning-based fears and that was the telephone.
7. At the first sign of bad weather, she avoided the telephone at all costs.
8. She also thought that lightning was attracted to her car so she stopped it in the middle of the road whenever a storm approached.
9. The writer of the essay never experienced electrical storms until he moved in with his aunt.
10. After a few severe storms, he understood her fears and even bought two raincoats of his own.

## Exercise 2

---

1. I just read an article about prehistoric rodents and I was surprised by their size.
2. Scientists recently discovered the remains of a rat-like creature called *Phoberomys* it was as big as a buffalo.
3. *Phoberomys* sat back on its large rear feet and fed itself with its smaller front feet in just the way rats and mice do now.
4. This supersized rodent lived in South America but luckily that was nearly ten million years ago.
5. At that time, South America was a separate continent it had no cows or horses to graze on its open land.
6. South America and North America were separated by the sea so there were also no large cats around to hunt and kill other large animals.
7. Scientists believe that *Phoberomys* thrived and grew large because of the lack of predators and competitors for food.
8. The *Phoberomys*' carefree lifestyle eventually disappeared for the watery separation between North and South America slowly became a land route.
9. The big carnivores of North America could travel down the new land route and the big rodents were defenseless against them.

- 10.** The rodents who survived were the smaller ones who could escape underground and that is the reason we have no buffalo-sized rats today.

Source: *Science News*, September 20, 2003

## Exercises 3 and 4

### CORRECTING RUN-ONS WITH DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Most of the following sentences are run-ons. Correct any run-on sentences by making one or more of the clauses *dependent*. You may rephrase the sentences, but be sure to use dependent words (such as *since, when, as, after, while, because*, or the other words listed on p. 73) to begin dependent clauses. Since various words can be used to form dependent clauses, your answers might differ from those suggested at the back of the book.

#### Exercise 3

1. Pablo Wendel is a German student of art he feels a special connection with a particular group of ancient sculptures.
2. Pablo acted on this feeling in September of 2006 it won him his "fifteen minutes of fame."
3. He had always admired the terra cotta warriors that were discovered in the 2,200-year-old tomb of a Chinese emperor.
4. Pablo decided to see the famous army of clay soldiers first-hand and to document his trip with photographs.
5. He made a special clay-covered costume it was complete with armor and a helmet.
6. Pablo took this outfit and a pedestal with him to the museum it is located in Xian, China.
7. He planned to take a picture of himself in costume outside the museum, but his dream to stand among the soldiers was too strong.
8. He entered the excavation site, jumped into the excavation pit, and joined the terra cotta army.
9. Pablo, in disguise, stood among his fellow "soldiers" and didn't move eventually someone spotted him.

- 10.** The museum guards confiscated Pablo's clay costume they let him go with just a warning.

*Source:* CNN.com, September 18, 2006

#### **Exercise 4**

---

- 1.** Our town has recently installed a new rapid transit system it uses trains instead of only buses.
- 2.** Freight trains used to run on tracks laid behind the buildings in town the new metro train tracks follow the same old route.
- 3.** I might try this new transportation method the parking on campus has been getting worse every semester.
- 4.** I would have to walk only a few blocks each day the stations are near my house and school.
- 5.** Some students don't live near the train stations they have to take a bus to the train.
- 6.** The old buses are bulky and ugly the new trains are sleek and attractive.
- 7.** The new trains seem to be inspiring many people to be more conscious of their driving habits some people will never change.
- 8.** I would gladly give up my car the convenience just has to match the benefits.
- 9.** The city has plans for additional routes these routes will bring more commuters in from out of town.
- 10.** My town is making real progress I am glad.

#### **Exercise 5**

---

Correct the following run-on sentences using any of the methods studied in this section: adding punctuation or using dependent words to create dependent clauses. See the chart on p. 87 if you need to review the methods.

- 1.** White buffalos are very rare and they are extremely important in Native American folklore.
- 2.** Many American Indian tribes feel a strong attachment to white buffalos they are viewed as omens of peace and prosperity.

3. One farm in Wisconsin is famous as a source of white buffalos three of them have been born on this farm since 1994.
4. The owners of the farm are Valerie and Dave Heider and they are as surprised as anyone about the unusual births.
5. The Heiders' first white buffalo was a female calf she was named Miracle.
6. Miracle became a local attraction visitors to the Heider farm raised tourism in the area by twenty-two percent in 1995.
7. A second white calf was born on the farm in 1996 however, it died after a few days.
8. Miracle survived until 2004 she lived for ten years.
9. In September of 2006, the Heider farm yielded a third white buffalo calf but it was a boy.
10. The odds against one white buffalo being born are high the odds against three being born in the same place are astronomical.

Sources: gazetteextra.com, September 9, 2006, and courant.com, September 15, 2006

## REVIEW OF FRAGMENTS AND RUN-ON SENTENCES

If you remember that all clauses include a subject and a verb, but only independent clauses can be punctuated as sentences (since only they can stand alone), then you will avoid fragments in your writing. And if you memorize these six rules for the punctuation of clauses, you will be able to avoid most punctuation errors.

### PUNCTUATING CLAUSES

I am a student. I am still learning.	(two sentences)
I am a student; I am still learning.	(two independent clauses)
I am a student; therefore, I am still learning.	(two independent clauses connected by a word such as <i>also</i> , <i>consequently</i> , <i>finally</i> , <i>furthermore</i> , <i>however</i> , <i>likewise</i> , <i>moreover</i> , <i>nevertheless</i> , <i>otherwise</i> , <i>then</i> , <i>therefore</i> , <i>thus</i> )
I am a student, so I am still learning.	(two independent clauses connected by <i>for</i> , <i>and</i> , <i>nor</i> , <i>but</i> , <i>or</i> , <i>yet</i> , <i>so</i> )
Because I am a student, I am still learning.	(dependent clause at beginning of sentence)

I am still learning because  
I am a student.

(dependent clause at end of sentence)  
Dependent words include *after, although, as, as if, because, before, even if, even though, ever since, how, if, since, so that, than, that, though, unless, until, what, whatever, when, whenever, where, whereas, wherever, whether, which, whichever, while, who, whom, whose, and why.*

---

It is essential that you learn the italicized words in the previous chart—which ones come between independent clauses and which ones introduce dependent clauses.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Rewrite the following student paragraph, making the necessary changes to eliminate fragments and run-on sentences.

Sometimes I feel like an egg. Always sitting in rows. In classrooms, the chairs are arranged in rows and at the movies the seats are connected into rows. Why can't chairs be scattered around randomly? In my classes, I usually choose a seat in the back row that way I have a view of the whole room. Luckily, I have good eyesight. Because the chalkboard or whiteboard can be hard to read at that distance. In movie theaters, the most distracting problem can come from the people behind me. I don't mind people making noise or talking but I can't stand people kicking my chair. Totally ruins my concentration. Therefore, I try to sit in the back row of the theater whenever possible.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write a sample sentence of your own to demonstrate each of the six ways to punctuate two clauses. You may model your sentences on the examples used in the review chart on p. 93. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Identifying Verb Phrases

Sometimes a verb is one word, but often the whole verb includes more than one word. These are called verb phrases. Look at several of the many forms of the verb *speak*, for example. Most of them are verb phrases, made up of the main verb (*speak*) and one or more helping verbs.

speak	is speaking	had been speaking
speaks	am speaking	will have been speaking
spoke	are speaking	is spoken
will speak	was speaking	was spoken
has spoken	were speaking	will be spoken
have spoken	will be speaking	can speak
had spoken	has been speaking	must speak
will have spoken	have been speaking	should have spoken

Note that words like the following are never verbs, even though they may be near a verb or in the middle of a verb phrase:

already	ever	not	really
also	finally	now	sometimes
always	just	often	usually
probably	never	only	possibly

Jason has never spoken to his instructor before. He always speaks with other students:

Two forms of *speak*—*speaking* and *to speak*—look like verbs, but neither form can ever be the only verb in a sentence. No *ing* word by itself or *to* \_\_\_\_\_ form of a verb can be the main verb of a sentence.

Jeanine speaking French. (not a sentence because there is no complete verb phrase)

Jeanine was speaking French. (a sentence with a complete verb phrase)

And no verb with *to* in front of it can ever be the verb of a sentence.

Ted to speak in front of groups. (not a sentence because there is no real verb)

Ted likes to speak in front of groups. (a sentence with *likes* as the verb)

These two forms, *speaking* and *to speak*, may be used as subjects or other parts of a sentence.

Speaking on stage is an art. To speak on stage is an art. Ted had a <sup>adj</sup> *speaking* part in that play.

## EXERCISES

Underline the verbs or verb phrases twice in the following sentences. The sentences may contain independent *and* dependent clauses, so there could be several verbs and verb phrases. (Remember that *ing* verbs alone and the *to* \_\_\_\_\_ forms of verbs are never real verbs in sentences.)

### Exercise 1

---

1. Scientists have found prehistoric musical instruments in various parts of the world.
2. But the ancient flute that was discovered in 2009 in southwest Germany may be the oldest playable instrument on earth.
3. The 35,000-year-old flute was made from the wing bone of a vulture.
4. The bone was hollowed out and pierced with five holes that produce the notes.
5. Two notches were carved at one end of the flute to form a kind of mouthpiece.
6. This ancient flute was probably played in the vertical position.
7. Other flutes that were made of ivory were found at the same time and in the same location.
8. People who have studied prehistoric instruments are hoping to learn more about the culture that produced them.

9. Visitors to various Web sites can listen to music from the world's oldest working flute.
10. Listeners will be taken back to 33,000 years B.C.E.

## Exercise 2

---

1. Have you ever felt a craving for art?
2. Have you said to yourself, "I need a new painting, or I will lose my mind"?
3. If you do find yourself in this situation, you can get instant satisfaction.
4. I am referring to Art-o-Mat machines, of course.
5. These vending machines dispense small pieces of modern art.
6. You insert five dollars, pull a knob on a refurbished cigarette dispenser, and out comes an original art piece.
7. The artists themselves get fifty percent of the selling price.
8. Art-o-Mat machines can be found at locations across the country.
9. Art-o-Mats are currently dispensing tiny paintings, photographs, and sculptures in twenty-eight states and in Canada and Austria.
10. The machines have sold the works of hundreds of contemporary artists.

Source: [www.artomat.org](http://www.artomat.org)

## Exercise 3

---

1. I am always working on my vocabulary.
2. *Lie* and *lay* can be tricky verbs to use sometimes.
3. They mean "rest" and "put," in that order.
4. Lately, I have been practicing with these two verbs.
5. I know that a sunken ship lies at the bottom of the ocean.
6. The *Titanic*, for example, has lain there for over ninety years.
7. When I left for school, my books were lying all over my desk.
8. A bricklayer is a person who lays bricks to form walls and walkways.
9. Last week, we laid a new foundation for the garage.
10. The contractors will be laying our new concrete driveway on Friday.

**Exercise 4**

---

1. I have been reading a series of books that were written by Erin McHugh.
2. These books are filled with facts about important people, places, events, and objects throughout history.
3. The series is called *The 5 W's*.
4. McHugh has included five separate books in the series: *Who?*, *What?*, *Where?*, *When?*, and *Why?*.
5. In *Who?*, McHugh offers fun tidbits and biographical information about influential people.
6. McHugh's discussion of the faces on U.S. money is filled with surprising information.
7. All but three of the people with their pictures on U.S. bills have been presidents of the United States.
8. Alexander Hamilton and Benjamin Franklin are still shown on the ten-dollar bill and the hundred-dollar bill, respectively.
9. The U.S. Treasury does not print \$10,000 bills anymore.
10. When it did print them, these big bills pictured the inventor of the nation's banking system, Salmon P. Chase.

**Exercise 5**

---

1. There have been several power outages in our neighborhood recently.
2. Last week when I was writing an essay on my computer, the power went off.
3. I had not saved my work, and I lost the last few sentences that I had written.
4. I did not enjoy the process of remembering those sentences.
5. Sometimes power outages can be fun.
6. If my whole family is at home, we light the candles on our two big candleabras and put them in the middle of the dining room table.

7. The room starts to look like the set of an old horror movie.
8. Then someone goes to the hall closet and grabs a board game to play.
9. On these special occasions, all of us can forget about school or work problems and just enjoy ourselves.
10. Maybe we should plan to spend evenings like this more often.

## REVIEW EXERCISE

To practice finding all of the sentence structures we have studied so far, mark the following paragraphs from a student essay. First, put parentheses around prepositional phrases, and then underline subjects once and verbs or verb phrases twice. Finally, put a broken line beneath dependent clauses. Begin by marking the first paragraph, and then check your answers at the back of the book before going on to the next paragraph. (Remember that *ing* verbs alone and the *to* \_\_\_\_ forms of verbs are never real verbs in sentences. We will learn more about them on p. 126.)

My brain feels like a computer's central processing unit. Information is continually pumping into its circuits. I organize the data, format it to my individual preferences, and lay it out in my own style. As I endlessly sculpt existing formulas, they become something of my own. When I need a solution to a problem, I access the data that I have gathered from my whole existence, even my preprogrammed DNA.

Since I am a student, teachers require that I supply them with specific information in various formats. When they assign an essay, I produce several paragraphs. If they need a summary, I scan the text, find its main ideas, and put them briefly into my own words. I know that I can accomplish whatever the teachers ask so that I can obtain a degree and continue processing ideas to make a living.

I compare my brain to a processor because right now I feel that I must work like one. As I go further into my education, my processor will be continually updated. And with any luck, I will end up with real, not artificial, intelligence.

## Using Standard English Verbs

The next two discussions are for those who need to practice using Standard English verbs. Many of us grew up doing more speaking than writing. But in college and in the business and professional worlds, knowledge of Standard Written English is essential.

The following charts show the forms of four verbs as they are used in Standard Written English. These forms might differ from the way you use these verbs when you speak. Memorize the Standard English forms of these important verbs. The first verb (*talk*) is one of the regular verbs (verbs that all end the same way according to a pattern); most verbs in English are regular. The other three verbs charted here (*have*, *be*, and *do*) are irregular and are important because they are used not only as main verbs but also as helping verbs in verb phrases.

Don't go on to the exercises until you have memorized the forms of these Standard English verbs.

### REGULAR VERB: TALK

#### PRESENT TIME

I	}	talk
you		
we		
they		
he, she, it		

#### PAST TIME

I	}	talked
you		
we		
they		
he, she, it		

### IRREGULAR VERB: HAVE

#### PRESENT TIME

I	}	have
you		
we		
they		
he, she, it		

#### PAST TIME

I	}	had
you		
we		
they		
he, she, it		

**IRREGULAR VERB: BE****PRESENT TIME**

I            am  
 you        }  
 we         }        are  
 they       }  
 he, she, it is

**PAST TIME**

I            was  
 you        }  
 we         }        were  
 they       }  
 he, she, it was

**IRREGULAR VERB: DO****PRESENT TIME**

I            }  
 you        }        do  
 we         }  
 they       }  
 he, she, it does

**PAST TIME**

I            }  
 you        }        did  
 we         }  
 they       }  
 he, she, it }

Sometimes you may have difficulty with the correct endings of verbs because you don't hear the words correctly. Note carefully the *s* sound and the *ed* sound at the end of words. Occasionally, the *ed* is not clearly pronounced, as in *They tried to help*, but most of the time you can hear it if you listen.

Read the following sentences aloud, making sure that you say every sound.

1. He seems satisfied with his new job.
2. She likes saving money for the future.
3. It takes strength of character to control spending.
4. Todd brings salad to every potluck he attends.
5. I used to know all of their names.
6. They supposed that they were right.
7. He recognized the suspect and excused himself from the jury.
8. The chess club sponsored Dorothy in the school's charity event.

Now read some other sentences aloud from this text, making sure that you say all the *s*'s and *ed*'s. Reading aloud and listening to others will help you use the correct verb endings automatically.

## EXERCISES

In these pairs of sentences, use the *present* form of the verb in the first sentence and the *past* form in the second. All the verbs follow the pattern of the regular verb *talk* except the irregular verbs *have*, *be*, and *do*. Keep referring to the charts if you're not sure which form to use. Check your answers in the back of the book after each set.

### Exercise 1

---

1. (end) Many new movies \_\_\_\_\_ too suddenly. The movie I saw yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ before I had finished my medium popcorn.
2. (do) Denise \_\_\_\_\_ her homework at the dinner table. She \_\_\_\_\_ two hours of homework last night.
3. (be) I \_\_\_\_\_ now the president of the film club on campus. I \_\_\_\_\_ just a member of the club last semester.
4. (vote) Patrick \_\_\_\_\_ in every election. He \_\_\_\_\_ with an absentee ballot in the presidential election of 2008.
5. (have) The twins \_\_\_\_\_ similar ideas about the environment. Last year, they \_\_\_\_\_ a fund-raiser for their local wildlife preserve.
6. (shop) We \_\_\_\_\_ for almost everything online. We \_\_\_\_\_ for groceries online last week.
7. (be) They \_\_\_\_\_ finally satisfied with their living room. They \_\_\_\_\_ embarrassed by it before the remodeling.
8. (pick) I \_\_\_\_\_ the location of our seats whenever we go to a concert. Yesterday, I also \_\_\_\_\_ our seats on the plane for our upcoming vacation.
9. (do) We \_\_\_\_\_ what we can for the birds in winter. A few years ago, we \_\_\_\_\_ our best to save a nearly frozen sparrow.
10. (have) My sister \_\_\_\_\_ a bad cold right now. She \_\_\_\_\_ the flu last month.

### Exercise 2

---

1. (be) They \_\_\_\_\_ rich and famous now. They \_\_\_\_\_ unknown a year ago.

2. (do) Jason \_\_\_\_\_ his best work in class. He \_\_\_\_\_ not do well on the take-home test.
3. (have) She \_\_\_\_\_ a new goal. She \_\_\_\_\_ an unrealistic goal before.
4. (tag) He \_\_\_\_\_ only the expensive items at his garage sales. In the past, he \_\_\_\_\_ all of the items.
5. (have) I always \_\_\_\_\_ a good time with my friends. At Disneyland, I \_\_\_\_\_ the best time of all.
6. (stuff) She \_\_\_\_\_ envelopes part time. Yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ envelopes for five hours straight.
7. (be) Many of us \_\_\_\_\_ allergic to milk, so we \_\_\_\_\_ unable to eat the pizza at the postgame party.
8. (do) They \_\_\_\_\_ their best to help their parents. They \_\_\_\_\_ the grocery shopping and the dishes this week.
9. (dance) You \_\_\_\_\_ very well now. You \_\_\_\_\_ a little awkwardly in high school.
10. (be) At the moment, they \_\_\_\_\_ the fastest delivery people in the business. They \_\_\_\_\_ the second-fastest delivery people just six months ago.

### Exercise 3

---

Circle the correct Standard English verb forms.

1. I recently (change, changed) my career plans; now I (want, wants) to be a teacher.
2. Last year, I (have, had) my mind set on becoming a nurse.
3. I (enroll, enrolled) in nursing classes, but they (was, were) different from what I (expect, expected).
4. The classes (was, were) often too stressful, and the teachers (was, were) very demanding.
5. We (does, did) spend part of the semester working in a clinic where we (was, were) able to observe just what a nurse (do, does).
6. The nurse that I (observe, observed) (have, had) several patients to look after.

7. I (watch, watched) him as he (cares, cared) for them and (follow, followed) the doctors' orders.
8. He (have, had) his patients, their families, and the clinic's doctors and staff to worry about all the time.
9. I never (imagine, imagined) that a nurse (have, had) so many responsibilities.
10. A teacher (need, needs) to worry about the students and the school, and those (is, are) responsibilities that I (is, am) ready to take.

#### **Exercise 4**

---

Circle the correct Standard English verb forms.

1. My cousin Isabel and I (has, have) a lot in common.
2. We both (play, plays) many different sports.
3. She (play, plays) soccer, softball, and basketball.
4. I (play, plays) tennis, badminton, and golf.
5. However, Isabel (practice, practices) more often than I (does, do).
6. The result (is, are) that she (win, wins) more often, too.
7. I (is, am) as skilled as she (is, am), but I (is, am) a little bit lazy.
8. Our parents (remind, reminds) us about practicing all the time.
9. Isabel really (follow, follows) their advice.
10. We both (has, have) talent, but I (is, am) not as disciplined as she (is, am).

#### **Exercise 5**

---

Correct any of following sentences that do not use Standard English verb forms.

1. Last semester, my drawing teacher hand us an assignment.
2. It was half of a photograph pasted onto a whole piece of paper.
3. We has to draw in the other half of the picture.
4. My picture show a woman sitting against the bottom of a tree trunk.
5. Her shoulders, hat, and umbrella was only partly there.
6. I tried to imagine what the missing parts look like.

7. The tree was easy to fill in because its shape was clear in the photo.
8. Therefore, I starts with the tree, the sky, and the ground.
9. Then I used my imagination to fill in the woman’s shoulders, hat, and umbrella.
10. I receives an “A” grade for my drawing.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Correct any sentences in the following paragraph that do not use Standard English verb forms.

Every day, as we arrive on campus and walk to our classrooms, we see things that needs to be fixed. Many of them cause us only a little bit of trouble, so we forgets them until we face them again. Every morning, there is a long line of students in their cars waiting to enter the parking lots because the lights at all of the corners is not timed properly. The lights from the main boulevard change too slowly, and that allow too many cars to stack up on the side streets. Students who walk to school is affected, too. Many drivers don’t watch where they is going and almost run over pedestrians who is walking in the driveways.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences about a problem on your campus. Check your sentences to be sure that they use Standard English verb forms. Try exchanging papers with another student for more practice. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Using Regular and Irregular Verbs

All regular verbs end the same way in the past form and when used with helping verbs. Here is a chart showing all the forms of some *regular* verbs and the various helping verbs with which they are used.

REGULAR VERBS				
BASE FORM	PRESENT	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	ING FORM
(Use after <i>can, may, shall, will, could, might, should, would, must, do, does, did.</i> )			(Use after <i>have, has, had</i> . Some can be used after <i>forms of be.</i> )	(Use after <i>forms of be.</i> )
ask	ask ( <i>s</i> )	asked	asked	asking
bake	bake ( <i>s</i> )	baked	baked	baking
count	count ( <i>s</i> )	counted	counted	counting
dance	dance ( <i>s</i> )	danced	danced	dancing
decide	decide ( <i>s</i> )	decided	decided	deciding
enjoy	enjoy ( <i>s</i> )	enjoyed	enjoyed	enjoying
finish	finish ( <i>es</i> )	finished	finished	finishing
happen	happen ( <i>s</i> )	happened	happened	happening
learn	learn ( <i>s</i> )	learned	learned	learning
like	like ( <i>s</i> )	liked	liked	liking
look	look ( <i>s</i> )	looked	looked	looking
mend	mend ( <i>s</i> )	mended	mended	mending
need	need ( <i>s</i> )	needed	needed	needing
open	open ( <i>s</i> )	opened	opened	opening
start	start ( <i>s</i> )	started	started	starting
suppose	suppose ( <i>s</i> )	supposed	supposed	supposing
tap	tap ( <i>s</i> )	tapped	tapped	tapping
walk	walk ( <i>s</i> )	walked	walked	walking
want	want ( <i>s</i> )	wanted	wanted	wanting

**NOTE**—When there are several helping verbs, the last one determines which form of the main verb should be used: they *should* finish soon; they should *have* finished an hour ago.

When do you write *ask*, *finish*, *suppose*, *use*? And when do you write *asked*, *finished*, *supposed*, *used*? Here are some rules that will help you decide.

**Write *ask*, *finish*, *suppose*, *use* (or their *s* forms) when writing about the present time, repeated actions, or facts:**

He *asks* questions whenever he is confused.

They always *finish* their projects on time.

I *suppose* you want me to help you move.

Birds *use* leaves, twigs, and feathers to build their nests.

**Write *asked*, *finished*, *supposed*, *used***

**1. When writing about the past:**

He *asked* the teacher for another explanation.

She *finished* her internship last year.

They *supposed* that there were others bidding on that house.

I *used* to study piano.

**2. When some form of *be* (other than the word *be* itself) comes before the word:**

He was *asked* the most difficult questions.

She is *finished* with her training now.

They were *supposed* to sign at the bottom of the form.

My essay was *used* as a sample of clear narration.

**3. When some form of *have* comes before the word:**

The teacher has *asked* us that question before.

She will have *finished* all of her exams by the end of May.

I had *supposed* too much without any proof.

We have *used* many models in my drawing class this semester.

All the verbs in the chart on p. 106 are *regular*. That is, they're all formed in the same way—with an *ed* ending on the past form and on the past participle. But many verbs are irregular. Their past and past participle forms change spelling instead of just adding an *ed*. Here's a chart of some *irregular* verbs. Notice that the base, present, and *ing* forms end the same as regular verbs. Refer to this list when you aren't sure which verb form to use. Memorize all the forms you don't know.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

BASE FORM	PRESENT	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	ING FORM
(Use after <i>can, may, shall, will, could, might, should, would, must, do, does, did.</i> )			(Use after <i>have, has, had.</i> Some can be used after <i>forms of be.</i> )	(Use after <i>forms of be.</i> )
be	is, am, are	was, were	been	being
become	become ( <i>s</i> )	became	become	becoming
begin	begin ( <i>s</i> )	began	begun	beginning
break	break ( <i>s</i> )	broke	broken	breaking
bring	bring ( <i>s</i> )	brought	brought	bringing
buy	buy ( <i>s</i> )	bought	bought	buying
build	build ( <i>s</i> )	built	built	building
catch	catch ( <i>es</i> )	caught	caught	catching
choose	choose ( <i>s</i> )	chose	chosen	choosing
come	come ( <i>s</i> )	came	come	coming
do	do ( <i>es</i> )	did	done	doing
draw	draw ( <i>s</i> )	drew	drawn	drawing
drink	drink ( <i>s</i> )	drank	drunk	drinking
drive	drive ( <i>s</i> )	drove	driven	driving
eat	eat ( <i>s</i> )	ate	eaten	eating
fall	fall ( <i>s</i> )	fell	fallen	falling
feel	feel ( <i>s</i> )	felt	felt	feeling
fight	fight ( <i>s</i> )	fought	fought	fighting
find	find ( <i>s</i> )	found	found	finding
forget	forget ( <i>s</i> )	forgot	forgotten	forgetting
forgive	forgive ( <i>s</i> )	forgave	forgiven	forgiving
freeze	freeze ( <i>s</i> )	froze	frozen	freezing
get	get ( <i>s</i> )	got	got <i>or</i> gotten	getting
give	give ( <i>s</i> )	gave	given	giving
go	go ( <i>es</i> )	went	gone	going
grow	grow ( <i>s</i> )	grew	grown	growing
have	have <i>or</i> has	had	had	having
hear	hear ( <i>s</i> )	heard	heard	hearing
hold	hold ( <i>s</i> )	held	held	holding
keep	keep ( <i>s</i> )	kept	kept	keeping
know	know ( <i>s</i> )	knew	known	knowing
lay (to put)	lay ( <i>s</i> )	laid	laid	laying

**IRREGULAR VERBS (CONTINUED)**

<b>BASE FORM</b>	<b>PRESENT</b>	<b>PAST</b>	<b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b>	<b>ING FORM</b>
lead (like "bead")	lead ( <i>s</i> )	led	led	leading
leave	leave ( <i>s</i> )	left	left	leaving
lie (to rest)	lie ( <i>s</i> )	lay	lain	lying
lose	lose ( <i>s</i> )	lost	lost	losing
make	make ( <i>s</i> )	made	made	making
meet	meet ( <i>s</i> )	met	met	meeting
pay	pay ( <i>s</i> )	paid	paid	paying
read	read ( <i>s</i> )	read	read	reading
(pron. "reed")		(pron. "red")	(pron. "red")	
ride	ride ( <i>s</i> )	rode	ridden	riding
ring	ring ( <i>s</i> )	rang	rung	ringing
rise	rise ( <i>s</i> )	rose	risen	rising
run	run ( <i>s</i> )	ran	run	running
say	say ( <i>s</i> )	said	said	saying
see	see ( <i>s</i> )	saw	seen	seeing
sell	sell ( <i>s</i> )	sold	sold	selling
shake	shake ( <i>s</i> )	shook	shaken	shaking
shine (give light)	shine ( <i>s</i> )	shone	shone	shining
shine (polish)	shine ( <i>s</i> )	shined	shined	shining
sing	sing ( <i>s</i> )	sang	sung	singing
sleep	sleep ( <i>s</i> )	slept	slept	sleeping
speak	speak ( <i>s</i> )	spoke	spoken	speaking
spend	spend ( <i>s</i> )	spent	spent	spending
stand	stand ( <i>s</i> )	stood	stood	standing
steal	steal ( <i>s</i> )	stole	stolen	stealing
strike	strike ( <i>s</i> )	struck	struck	striking
swim	swim ( <i>s</i> )	swam	swum	swimming
swing	swing ( <i>s</i> )	swung	swung	swinging
take	take ( <i>s</i> )	took	taken	taking
teach	teach ( <i>es</i> )	taught	taught	teaching
tear	tear ( <i>s</i> )	tore	torn	tearing
tell	tell ( <i>s</i> )	told	told	telling
think	think ( <i>s</i> )	thought	thought	thinking
throw	throw ( <i>s</i> )	threw	thrown	throwing
wear	wear ( <i>s</i> )	wore	worn	wearing
win	win ( <i>s</i> )	won	won	winning
write	write ( <i>s</i> )	wrote	written	writing

Sometimes verbs from the past participle column are used after some form of the verb *be* (or verbs that take the place of *be* like *appear*, *seem*, *look*, *feel*, *get*, *act*, *become*) to describe the subject or to say something in a passive, rather than an active, way.

She is contented.

You appear pleased. (You *are* pleased.)

He seems delighted. (He *is* delighted.)

She looked surprised. (She *was* surprised.)

I feel shaken. (I *am* shaken.)

They get bored easily. (They *are* bored easily.)

You acted concerned. (You *were* concerned.)

They were thrown out of the game. (Active: *The referee threw them out of the game.*)

We were interviewed by the reporters. (Active: *The reporters interviewed us.*)

When these verb forms describe the subject, they become adjectives; at other times, they still act as part of the verb in the sentence. What you call them doesn't matter. Just be sure to use the correct form from the past participle column.

## EXERCISES

Write the correct form of the verbs in the blanks. Refer to the charts and explanations on the preceding pages if you aren't sure which form to use after a certain helping verb. Check your answers after each exercise.

### Exercise 1

---

1. (live) I currently \_\_\_\_\_ with my parents.
2. (live) I have \_\_\_\_\_ with them all of my life.
3. (live) Someday I will \_\_\_\_\_ in my own apartment.
4. (live) Once I am \_\_\_\_\_ on my own, things will change for me.
5. (live) My brother has \_\_\_\_\_ in a dorm ever since he moved to Berkeley.
6. (live) In his e-mails, he describes the roommates that he \_\_\_\_\_ with.

7. (live) I am glad that I can still \_\_\_\_\_ at home while I am in college.
8. (live) My parents seem pleased that I have been \_\_\_\_\_ with them for so long.
9. (live) We know each other's habits, and we \_\_\_\_\_ with each other's quirks.
10. (live) We are all a bit sad that I will soon be \_\_\_\_\_ away from home.

## Exercise 2

---

1. (get) A few months ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ a kitten named Samantha. She has silvery gray fur and long white whiskers. Samantha always \_\_\_\_\_ so excited when I sprinkle catnip on the rug.
2. (give) When my friend Will \_\_\_\_\_ Samantha to me, she was the sleekest, most graceful of his cat's kittens. Since then, I have \_\_\_\_\_ her almost all of my attention.
3. (be) Now I \_\_\_\_\_ a certified cat lover, and Sam \_\_\_\_\_ a great cat.
4. (think) Before I had Samantha, my parents \_\_\_\_\_ that I was too irresponsible to own a cat, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ so, or I wouldn't have taken her in the first place.
5. (grow) Samantha has \_\_\_\_\_ into a plump, handsome cat. And I \_\_\_\_\_ catnip plants in the backyard.
6. (leave) Before I \_\_\_\_\_ for school each day, I make sure that Sam is inside the house. Once, I \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen window open, and I found her sitting near the street when I came home.
7. (wave) Sam loves to play with a toy that I made for her. I \_\_\_\_\_ the bunch of feathers on a string in front of her, and she \_\_\_\_\_ her paws at them and tries to eat them.
8. (know) Samantha \_\_\_\_\_ her name and will come when she hears me call. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ that cats could do that.
9. (do) Sam \_\_\_\_\_ many cute things, and I \_\_\_\_\_ my best to keep her healthy and make her happy.

10. (be) I \_\_\_\_\_ a little nervous when I first brought Sam home, but I could not \_\_\_\_\_ happier with a pet than I \_\_\_\_\_ now.

### Exercise 3

---

1. (take, suppose) My sister Bonnie \_\_\_\_\_ me to the movies last Tuesday afternoon even though I was \_\_\_\_\_ to be at work.
2. (be, go) It \_\_\_\_\_ the only time that Bonnie could \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies with me.
3. (call, leave, feel) So I \_\_\_\_\_ my boss and \_\_\_\_\_ a message that I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well enough to go to work.
4. (imagine, be) I never \_\_\_\_\_ that I would get caught, but I \_\_\_\_\_ wrong.
5. (buy, drive, see) Just as Bonnie and I were \_\_\_\_\_ our tickets, my boss \_\_\_\_\_ by and \_\_\_\_\_ us.
6. (feel, know, be) I \_\_\_\_\_ such panic because I \_\_\_\_\_ that my boss would \_\_\_\_\_ mad at me.
7. (try, go) I \_\_\_\_\_ to explain myself when I \_\_\_\_\_ back to the office the next day.
8. (be, undo) The damage had \_\_\_\_\_ done, however, and nothing could \_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. (wish, take) Now I \_\_\_\_\_ that I could \_\_\_\_\_ back that day.
10. (do, be) I \_\_\_\_\_ not have much fun with Bonnie, and the movie \_\_\_\_\_ not even good.

### Exercise 4

---

1. (use, have) Many people \_\_\_\_\_ cell phones that \_\_\_\_\_ voice-recognition capabilities.
2. (do, speak, dial) With such a system, callers \_\_\_\_\_ not have to dial phone numbers by hand. Instead, they just \_\_\_\_\_ into the phone, and the phone \_\_\_\_\_ the number.

3. (be, be) When driving a car, callers \_\_\_\_\_ then free to watch the road and steer the car without distraction. These phones \_\_\_\_\_ much safer.
4. (be, like, start) Voice dialing \_\_\_\_\_ almost always optional, but so many people \_\_\_\_\_ the system that most people have \_\_\_\_\_ to use it.
5. (do, want) My mom \_\_\_\_\_ not trust such systems; she \_\_\_\_\_ to have complete control over her own dialing.
6. (trust, be) She barely even \_\_\_\_\_ cell phones, so she \_\_\_\_\_ definitely suspicious of voice dialing.
7. (imagine, dial) I can \_\_\_\_\_ her as a teenager in the sixties. In my mind, she is \_\_\_\_\_ one of those rotary-operated princess phones.
8. (ask, tell, be) I was \_\_\_\_\_ my mom about phones the other day, and I \_\_\_\_\_ her how old-fashioned she \_\_\_\_\_.
9. (look, smile) She just \_\_\_\_\_ at me and \_\_\_\_\_.
10. (have) My mom \_\_\_\_\_ a way of saying a lot with just a smile.

### Exercise 5

---

1. (sit, see) I was \_\_\_\_\_ in the lobby of the haircutting place near my house when I \_\_\_\_\_ one of my old high school teachers, Mr. Blair.
2. (be, appear) He \_\_\_\_\_ obviously waiting for a haircut too and \_\_\_\_\_ to be nervous about it.
3. (flip, turn, look) As he \_\_\_\_\_ through a magazine, he \_\_\_\_\_ his face toward the big front window and \_\_\_\_\_ longingly in the direction of his car.
4. (be, wear, think, be) During my high school years, Mr. Blair \_\_\_\_\_ well-liked because he \_\_\_\_\_ his hair in a pony tail, so everyone \_\_\_\_\_ that he \_\_\_\_\_ cool.
5. (pass, seem) As the minutes \_\_\_\_\_ in the hair salon, Mr. Blair \_\_\_\_\_ to calm down.

- 6.** (wait, cut) I was \_\_\_\_\_ to see whether Mr. Blair would really \_\_\_\_\_ his pony tail off after all these years.
- 7.** (call, watch, recognize) When my name was \_\_\_\_\_, I \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Blair's face to see whether he would \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 8.** (look, figure, be) He didn't \_\_\_\_\_ up, so I \_\_\_\_\_ that he \_\_\_\_\_ too busy worrying about his own hair to notice me.
- 9.** (get, chat, be) I \_\_\_\_\_ my usual simple cut, and as I \_\_\_\_\_ with my haircutter, I \_\_\_\_\_ surprised to see Mr. Blair's haircutter finish his cut within just a few minutes.
- 10.** (come, leave) Mr. Blair had apparently just \_\_\_\_\_ in for a trim, and he \_\_\_\_\_ the lobby with the water from his long wet hair soaking into the top of his shirt.

## PROGRESS TEST

This test covers everything you've studied so far. One sentence in each pair is correct. The other is incorrect. Read both sentences carefully before you decide. Then write the letter of the incorrect sentence in the blank. Try to name the error and correct it if you can.

1. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My research paper will probably be late.  
**B.** I should of done all my research sooner.
2. \_\_\_\_ **A.** That package had an address label written in pencil.  
**B.** We were surprised that it made it to it's destination.
3. \_\_\_\_ **A.** We were suppose to meet in the library.  
**B.** But we couldn't get there before it closed.
4. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My friends are all really lucky.  
**B.** Their going to exciting locations for spring break, but I'm staying at home.
5. \_\_\_\_ **A.** I was the first student to finish the quiz but I had to wait for the others.  
**B.** When all of the students had finished, the teacher collected the quiz papers.
6. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Textbooks and school supplies can be purchased online.  
**B.** Often costing much less than the ones in stores.
7. \_\_\_\_ **A.** An assignment in my music appreciation class required a trip to the opera.  
**B.** I ask the teacher if I could get extra credit by going to two performances.
8. \_\_\_\_ **A.** We've all ready taken three tests in my math class.  
**B.** We'll have four more tests before the final exam.
9. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The bus driver tried to brake too quickly.  
**B.** The brakes didn't work fast enough so the bus hopped over the curb.
10. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Although I don't like the taste of coconut or pineapple.  
**B.** I do like shampoos and conditioners that smell like these tropical fruits.

## Maintaining Subject-Verb Agreement

As we have seen, the subject and verb in a sentence work together, so they must always agree. Different subjects need different forms of verbs. When the correct verb follows a subject, we call it subject-verb agreement.

The following sentences illustrate the rule that *s* verbs follow most singular subjects but not plural subjects.

One turtle walks.

Three turtles walk.

The baby cries.

The babies cry.

A democracy listens to the people.

Democracies listen to the people.

One child plays.

Many children play.

The following sentences show how forms of the verb *be* (*is, am, are, was, were*) and helping verbs (*be, have, and do*) are made to agree with their subjects. We have labeled only the verbs that must agree with the subjects.

This puzzle is difficult.

These puzzles are difficult.

I am amazed.

You are amazed.

He was sleeping.

They were sleeping.

That class has been canceled.

Those classes have been canceled.

She does not want to participate.

They do not want to participate.

The following words are always singular and take an *s* verb or the irregular equivalent (*is, was, has, does*):

one	anybody	each
anyone	everybody	
everyone	nobody	
no one	somebody	
someone		

Someone feeds my dog in the morning.

Everybody was at the party.

Each does her own homework.

Remember that prepositional phrases often come between subjects and verbs. You should ignore these interrupting phrases, or you may mistake the wrong word for the subject and use a verb form that doesn't agree.

Someone from the apartments feeds my dog in the morning. (*Someone* is the subject, not *apartments*.)

Everybody on the list of celebrities was at the party. (*Everybody* is the subject, not *celebrities*.)

Each of the twins does her own homework. (*Each* is the subject, not *twins*.)

However, the words *some*, *any*, *all*, *none*, and *most* are exceptions to this rule of ignoring prepositional phrases. These words can be singular or plural, depending on the words that follow them in prepositional phrases. Again, we have labeled only the verbs that must agree with the subjects.

Some of the *pie* is gone.

Some of the *cookies* are gone.

Is any of the *paper* still in the supply cabinet?

Are any of the *pencils* still in the supply cabinet?

All of her *work* has been published.

All of her *poems* have been published.

None of the *jewelry* is missing.

None of the *clothes* are missing.

On July 4th, most of the *country* celebrates.

On July 4th, most of the *citizens* celebrate.

When a sentence has more than one subject joined by *and*, the subject is plural:

The teacher *and* the tutors eat lunch at noon.

A glazed doughnut *and* an onion bagel were sitting on the plate.

However, when two subjects are joined by *or*, then the subject *closest* to the verb determines the verb form:

Either the teacher *or* the tutors eat lunch at noon.

Either the tutors *or* the teacher eats lunch at noon.

A glazed doughnut *or* an onion bagel was sitting on the plate.

In most sentences, the subject comes before the verb. However, in some cases, the subject follows the verb, and subject-verb agreement needs special attention. Study the following examples:

Over the building flies a solitary flag. (flag flies)

Over the building fly several flags. (flags fly)

There is a good reason for my actions. (reason is)

There are good reasons for my actions. (reasons are)

## EXERCISES

Circle the correct verbs in parentheses to maintain subject-verb agreement in the following sentences. Remember to ignore prepositional phrases, unless the subjects are *some*, *any*, *all*, *none*, or *most*. Check your answers ten at a time.

### Exercise 1

---

1. There (is, are) a Web site that (has, have) been rating movies since 1997 based on how accurately they (portray, portrays) the laws of physics.

2. Intuitor.com (is, are) the name of the site, and the movie ratings (is, are) listed in a section called “Insultingly Stupid Movie Physics.”
3. Examples of bad physics in movies (include, includes) bullets that (spark, sparks) on contact and laser beams that (is, are) visible to the naked eye.
4. The reviewers at Intuitor.com (give, gives) movies one of the following ratings: GP, PGP, PGP-13, RP, XP, or NR.
5. These labels (rank, ranks) the physics in a particular movie from “good physics” [GP] to “pretty good physics” [PGP] to “totally unbelievable physics” [XP], such as those in *Star Trek 2009* and *Armageddon*.
6. The recent classic films *Titanic*, *Casino Royale*, and *The Terminator* (has, have) all received GP or PGP ratings.
7. A movie that (get, gets) the PGP-13 rating—such as *King Kong* in 2005—is one that (has, have) flaws in portraying the laws of physics, but the movie (is, are) so convincing that it may lead children to believe that it (is, are) scientifically accurate.
8. The NR label (signify, signifies) that movies like *The Hulk* and *Spider-Man* (is, are) “not rated” because of their obvious focus on imaginative, not scientific, possibilities.
9. RP, the lowest of the site’s ratings, (is, are) given to movies with such bad physics that they (make, makes) the reviewers “retch.”
10. The RP rating (has, have) been given to *10,000 BC*, *The Abyss*, *Independence Day*, and to two of *The Matrix* movies.

## Exercise 2

---

1. I (work, works) at an insurance agency as a part-time file clerk.
2. My favorite coworkers at the office (is, are) Teresa and Jesse.
3. Teresa and I (has, have) the same shift, so we (know, knows) each other very well.
4. Our hours each day (is, are) from 3:00 to 7:00.
5. As soon as Teresa (get, gets) to the office, she (separate, separates) the files into alphabetical stacks.

6. When I (get, gets) there, I (ask, asks) the office manager if there (is, are) any special filing tasks for us.
7. If there (is, are) a special task, Teresa and I (do, does) that one first.
8. Then we (focus, focuses) on the regular filing of people's records back into their places.
9. Jesse and his managers (work, works) in the office next door to ours.
10. One of his bosses (is, are) nice, but the others (isn't, aren't) as friendly.

### Exercise 3

---

1. In his book *Catwatching*, Desmond Morris (explain, explains) why cats (seem, seems) to be able to feel earthquakes before they (happen, happens).
2. First of all, the cat (feel, feels) sensations that we humans (doesn't, don't).
3. Earthquakes (begin, begins) with movements far under ground, and cats often (react, reacts).
4. Some of these reactions (is, are) among the reasons why cats (has, have) been thought to have magical powers.
5. Another explanation for cats' predictions (is, are) that they (sense, senses) changes in static electricity or in the earth's magnetic fields.
6. Most of us (doesn't, don't) notice such changes, but some people (get, gets) headaches before earthquakes, headaches that may be caused by the change.
7. A human being just (isn't, aren't) able to tell the difference between a pre-earthquake headache and a regular stress-related one.
8. Cats (does, do) seem to have such abilities.
9. Many people (has, have) witnessed what cats (does, do) when an earthquake (is, are) approaching.
10. Cats suddenly (look, looks) scared and (run, runs) back and forth or in and out of a house or building; research (have, has) shown that we humans should pay close attention when they (does, do).

### Exercise 4

---

1. Bulletproof windows (has, have) been used for protection for a long time.
2. Of course, they (was, were) only helpful from one direction.
3. There (was, were) no way to shoot back from inside the bulletproof glass.
4. Now there (is, are) a new kind of bulletproof window.
5. The new window (allow, allows) someone to shoot through it from inside and still be protected from bullets fired at it from outside.
6. A bullet (travel, travels) out through the new multilayered substance.
7. As the bullet (break, breaks) through on its way out, it (melt, melts) the substance and (seal, seals) it again.
8. Police departments (is, are) very interested in this new technology.
9. They (realize, realizes) how useful such a substance could be for their officers.
10. The cost of the new windows (is, are) high, but the benefits (is, are) worth it.

*Source: Discover, November 2003*

### Exercise 5

---

1. An old rhyme about sneezing (give, gives) a sneeze on each day of the week special meaning.
2. The poem (sound, sounds) a lot like the one that (begin, begins) "Monday's child (is, are) full of woe."
3. This poem about sneezing also (connect, connects) Monday with a negative outcome.
4. It (say, says) that a sneeze on Monday (mean, means) "danger."
5. A Tuesday sneeze (forecast, forecasts) a meeting with a "stranger."
6. Wednesday and Thursday (is, are) days when sneezes (mean, means) we will receive a "letter" or "something better," respectively.

7. There (is, are) no TGIF celebrations for sneezes on Friday, for they (foretell, foretells) “sorrow.”
8. But a sneeze on Saturday (mean, means) the visit of a loved one “tomorrow.”
9. Sunday sneezes (is, are) left out of the poem altogether.
10. Such day-of-the-week rhymes from the past (seem, seems) to reveal a lot about us.

Source: *Schott's Original Miscellany* (Bloomsbury, 2003)

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Find and correct the ten subject-verb agreement errors in the following paragraph.

Unfortunately, tension between members of the public are common these days. When two people at a movie theater irritates each other or have a disagreement, the whole audience suffer. Everyone who is sitting around the troublemakers want to move immediately to another section. However, if anyone get up to sit somewhere else, then everyone else start to get nervous. So most people just waits until one of two fighting people calm down. After that, the members of the audience forgets about the disturbance and enjoy the rest of the movie. The same pattern repeat itself in stadiums and ballparks, too.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences in which you describe the classes you are taking right now. Use verbs in the present time. Then go back over your sentences—underline the subjects once, the verbs twice, and be sure they agree. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Avoiding Shifts in Time

People often worry about using different time frames in writing. Let common sense guide you. If you begin writing a paper in past time, don't shift back and forth to the present unnecessarily; and if you begin in the present, don't shift to the past without good reason. In the following paragraph, the writer starts in the present and then shifts to the past, then shifts again to the present:

In the novel *To Kill a Mockingbird*, Jean Louise Finch is a little girl who lives in the South with her father, Atticus, and her brother, Jem. Everybody in town calls Jean Louise "Scout" as a nickname. When Atticus, a lawyer, defended a black man against the charges of a white woman, some of their neighbors turned against him. Scout protected her father by appealing to the humanity of one member of the angry mob. In this chapter, five-year-old Scout turns out to be stronger than a group of adult men.

All the verbs should be in the present:

In the novel *To Kill a Mockingbird*, Jean Louise Finch is a little girl who lives in the South with her father, Atticus, and her brother, Jem. Everybody in town calls Jean Louise "Scout" as a nickname. When Atticus, a lawyer, defends a black man against the charges of a white woman, some of their neighbors turn against him. Scout protects her father by appealing to the humanity of one member of the angry mob. In this chapter, five-year-old Scout turns out to be stronger than a group of adult men.

This sample paragraph discusses only the events that happen within the novel's plot, so it needs to maintain one time frame—the present, which we use to write about literature and repeated actions.

However, sometimes you will write about the present, the past, and even the future together. Then it may be necessary to use these different time frames within the same paragraph, each for its own reason. For example, if you were to give biographical information about Harper Lee, author of *To Kill a Mockingbird*, within a discussion of the novel and its influence, you might need to use all three time frames:

Harper Lee grew up in Alabama, and she based elements in the book on experiences from her childhood. Like the character Atticus, Lee's father was a lawyer. She wrote the novel in his law offices. *To Kill a Mockingbird* is Harper Lee's most famous work, and it received the Pulitzer Prize for fiction in 1960. Lee's book will turn fifty years old in the year 2010. It will always remain one of the most moving and compassionate novels in American literature.

The previous paragraph uses past (*grew, based, was, wrote, received*), present (*is*), and future (*will turn, will remain*) in the same paragraph without committing the error of shifting. Shifting occurs when the writer changes time frames *inconsistently or for no reason*, confusing the reader (as in the first example given).

## PROOFREADING EXERCISES

Which of the following student paragraphs shift *unnecessarily* back and forth between time frames? In those that do, change the verbs to maintain one time frame, thus making the entire paragraph read smoothly. One of the paragraphs is correct.

**1.** No one knows for certain who the model for Leonardo da Vinci's *Mona Lisa* was. However, recent studies have discovered some new information. Dutch scientists used a computer program that is capable of "emotion recognition" to find out how the model felt at the time of the painting. Their results show that she was primarily happy. But her expression also registers tiny bits of anger, fear, and disgust. Another expert, Japanese forensic scientist Dr. Matsumi Suzuki, has created an actual voice for *Mona Lisa*. Using measurements of her head and hands, Dr. Suzuki has determined that she was approximately five-and-a-half feet tall and had a deep voice. A recording of what *Mona Lisa* might have sounded like can be heard on the Web.

*Source: Renaissance Magazine, Issue #50 (2006)*

**2.** Back in the early 1900s, Sears Roebuck sold houses through the mail. The houses are listed along with the rest of the products in Sears' famous catalog. The house kits arrived in thousands of pieces, and people can put them together themselves. Or they get a builder to help them. In 1919, one company, Standard Oil, places an order for an entire town's worth of houses as shelter for its employees. The house kits even included the paint that the homeowners use to paint the houses when they will be finished. The ability to order a whole house from the Sears catalog ended in 1940, but thousands of them are still being lived in by people across America.

*Source: CBS News Sunday Morning, May 18, 2003*

**3.** The last time I took my car in for a scheduled service, I noticed a few problems when I pick it up. I check the oil dipstick, and it has really dark oil still on it. Also, there was a screwdriver balancing on my air-filter cover. I can't believe it when I see it, but as soon as I showed the tool to the service manager, he calls the mechanic over to take my car back to the service area. After another hour, my car is ready, the dipstick has clean oil on it, and the service manager cleared the bill so that I didn't have to pay anything.

## Recognizing Verbal Phrases

We know (from the discussion on p. 95) that a verb phrase is made up of a main verb and at least one helping verb. But sometimes certain forms of verbs are used not as real verbs but as some other part of a sentence. Verbs put to other uses are called *verbals*.

A verbal can be a subject:

*Skiing* is my favorite Olympic sport. (*Skiing* is the subject, not the verb. The verb is *is*.)

A verbal can be a descriptive word:

His *bruised* ankle healed very quickly. (*Bruised* describes the subject, ankle. *Healed* is the verb.)

A verbal can be an object:

I like to read during the summer. (*To read* is the object. *Like* is the verb.)

Verbals link up with other words to form *verbal phrases*. To see the difference between a real verb phrase and a verbal phrase, look at these two sentences:

I was bowling with my best friends. (*Bowling* is the main verb in a verb phrase. Along with the helping verb *was*, it shows the action of the sentence.)

I enjoyed *bowling* with my best friends. (Here the real verb is *enjoyed*. *Bowling* is not the verb; it is part of a verbal phrase—*bowling with my best friends*—which is what I enjoyed.)

### THREE KINDS OF VERBALS

1. *ing* verbs used without helping verbs (*running, thinking, baking . . .*)
2. verb forms that often end in *ed, en, or t* (*tossed, spoken, burnt . . .*)
3. verbs that follow *to* \_\_\_\_\_ (*to walk, to eat, to cause . . .*)

Look at the following sentences using the three kind of verbals in verbal phrases:

Running two miles a day is great exercise. (real verb = is)

She spent two hours *thinking of a title for her essay*. (real verb = spent)

We had such fun *baking those cherry vanilla cupcakes*. (real verb = had)

*Tossed in a salad*, artichoke hearts add zesty flavor. (real verb = add)

*Spoken in Spanish*, the dialogue sounds even more beautiful. (real verb = sounds)

Our gourmet pizza, *burnt by a careless chef*, shrunk to half its normal size. (real verb = shrunk)

I like *to walk around the zoo by myself*. (real verb = like)

*To eat exotic foods* takes courage. (real verb = takes)

They actually wanted *to cause an argument*. (real verb = wanted)

## E X E R C I S E S

All of the following sentences contain real verbs and verbals—verb forms that function as other parts of speech. Double underline the real verbs or verb phrases, and put brackets [ ] around the verbals and verbal phrases. Remember that verbal *phrases* begin with one of the three kinds of verbals and include other words to complete their function. In addition, a verbal or verbal phrase may show up inside another, making them a lot of fun to find. Check your answers often as you work on these exercises.

Example: They tried [to help] by [cooking a meal of [frozen] leftovers].

### Exercise 1

---

1. The Lunar Republic Society is an international company that has taken on the task of naming parts of our Moon.
2. After Michael Jackson's death in 2009, the society wanted to pay tribute to the inventor of the "moonwalk" in a special way.

3. It decided to name one of the Moon's craters after him.
4. Coincidentally, the Moon already had a Jackson crater, commemorating an astronomer from Scotland named John Jackson.
5. Therefore, Lunar Republic officials needed to use the King of Pop's full name, Michael Joseph Jackson, as the name for his crater.
6. Crater Michael Joseph Jackson used to be called Posidonius J, in honor of an ancient Greek intellectual.
7. An ordinary home telescope is all one needs to see Michael Jackson's newly named crater.
8. Other famous people to have craters named after them are Leonardo da Vinci and Christopher Columbus.
9. Michael Jackson's fascination with the Moon led him to buy "property" there while he was alive.
10. Jackson owned over a thousand acres of land on the Moon and dreamed of performing his signature moonwalk there someday.

Source: [www.lunarrepublic.com](http://www.lunarrepublic.com)

## Exercise 2

---

1. Philippe Halsman was a well-known portrait photographer working in the twentieth century.
2. Halsman's photographs were good enough to appear on the cover of *Life* magazine 101 times.
3. Capturing the essence of famous people on film was Halsman's specialty.
4. The list of celebrities that Halsman was asked to photograph included Marilyn Monroe, Albert Einstein, and Winston Churchill.
5. Halsman found that taking good pictures of such powerful people was not easy.
6. He often tried to find new ways to loosen them up.
7. In 1952, Halsman asked one of his elite clients to jump in the air while being photographed.
8. Halsman loved the results, and he started a series of jumping pictures.

9. Who doesn't like to see famous people like Richard Nixon jumping up like a little boy in a photograph?
10. Halsman gathered the best of the jumping photographs in a book called *Philippe Halsman's Jump Book*.

Source: *Smithsonian*, October 2006

### Exercise 3

---

1. To paraphrase Mark Twain, golfing is just a way to ruin a good walk.
2. In fact, becoming a golfer can be dangerous.
3. Golf professionals commonly suffer a couple of injuries per year resulting from long hours of practicing their swings.
4. Amateur golfers tend to injure themselves much more often.
5. Most injuries come from the twisting, squatting, and bending involved in golfing.
6. And moving the heavy bags of clubs from cars to carts can wrench the backs of potential golfers before they even begin to play.
7. Of course, there are the unfortunate incidents of people on golf courses being struck by lightning.
8. But some of the sources of golfers' ailments may be surprising.
9. Cleaning the dirt and debris off the golf balls by licking them, for instance, may have serious repercussions.
10. After swallowing the chemicals sprayed on the turf of the golf course, players can develop liver problems.

Source: *I'm Afraid, You're Afraid: 448 Things to Fear and Why* (Hyperion, 2000)

### Exercise 4

---

1. I like to listen to music at home.
2. Playing my favorite songs out loud through my speakers is my main way to relax.
3. I have tried using headphones, but they hurt my ears.

4. I also don't like to feel disconnected from everyone else.
5. Filling my house with well-chosen tunes allows me to maintain my identity.
6. We all use choices of music, fashion, and art to define ourselves.
7. Some people wear T-shirts showing pictures or slogans that they like.
8. I want everyone to hear the music that I like.
9. My neighbors have not complained about my habit of listening to music without using headphones.
10. I try to be considerate of them and turn down the volume at 10:00 every night.

### Exercise 5

---

1. Why do plumbing emergencies always happen on the weekends?
2. Toilets, sinks, and tubs seem to know when plumbers' rates go up.
3. Some emergencies—a slow-draining sink, for instance—can be tolerated for a couple of days.
4. And a dripping shower faucet may cause annoyance, but not panic.
5. However, a backed-up sewer pipe definitely can't wait until Monday.
6. No one wants to see that water rising and overflowing the rim of the bowl.
7. At that point, the only question is which "roofer" service to call.
8. Finding the main drainage line often takes more time than clearing it.
9. Once the plumber has finished fixing the problem, he or she usually eyes future potential disasters and offers to prevent them with even more work.
10. After getting the final bill, I hope that my children will grow up to be not doctors but plumbers.

### PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Double underline the real verbs or verb phrases, and put brackets around the verbals and verbal phrases in the following paragraphs from the popular book *An Incomplete Education*, by Judy Jones and William Wilson.

## **Christo and Jeanne-Claude (1935-, 1935-)**

It started as an obsession with wrapping. The Bulgarian-born artist Christo spent years swaddling bicycles, trees, storefronts, and women friends before moving on to wrap a section of the Roman Wall, part of the Australian coastline, and eventually all twelve arches, plus the parapets, sidewalks, streetlamps, vertical embankment, and esplanade, of Paris' Pont Neuf. And yes, together they did wrap the Reichstag. But Christo and his wife/manager/collaborator Jeanne-Claude are quick to insist that wrappings form only a small percentage of their total oeuvre. There were, for instance, those twenty-four and a half miles of white nylon, eighteen feet high, they hung from a steel cable north of San Francisco; the eleven islands in Biscayne Bay, Florida, they "surrounded"—not wrapped, mind you—with pink polypropylene fabric; and the 3,100 enormous blue and yellow "umbrellas" they erected in two corresponding valleys in California and Japan. Not to mention their 2005 blockbuster, "The Gates," 7,503 sixteen-foot-tall saffron panels they suspended, to the delight of almost everybody, over twenty-three miles of footpaths in New York's Central Park.

So, what's their point? Rest assured, you're not the first to ask. And no one is more eager to tell you than the artist formerly known as Christo (now, officially, "Christo and Jeanne-Claude") whose art is nothing if not Open to the Public. In fact, taking art public—that is, taking it away from the Uptown Museum Gallery Complex by making it too big to fit in studios, museums, or galleries—was part of the original idea. Christo and Jeanne-Claude will tell you that their point is, literally, to rock your world. By temporarily disrupting one part of an environment, they hope to get you to "perceive the whole environment with new eyes and a new consciousness."

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences that contain verbal phrases. Use the ten verbals listed here to begin your verbal phrases: *thinking, folding, skiing, marking, to take, to get, to paste, to exercise, planned, given*. The last two may seem particularly difficult to use as verbals. There are sample sentences listed in the Answers section at the back of the book. But first, try to write your own so that you can compare the two. Use your own paper, and keep all of your sentence writing results in a folder.

## Correcting Misplaced or Dangling Modifiers

When we modify something, we change whatever it is by adding something to it. We might modify a car, for example, by adding special tires. In English, we call words, phrases, and clauses *modifiers* when they add information to part of a sentence. As we saw on p. 28, to do its job properly, a modifier should be in the right spot—as close to the word it describes as possible. If we put new tires on the roof of the car instead of where they belong, they would be misplaced. In the following sentence, the modifier is too far away from the word it modifies to make sense. It is a misplaced modifier:

Swinging from tree to tree, we watched the monkeys at the zoo.

Was it *we* who were swinging from tree to tree? That's what the sentence says because the modifying phrase *Swinging from tree to tree* is next to *we*. It should be next to *monkeys*.

At the zoo, we watched the monkeys swinging from tree to tree.

The next example has no word at all for the modifier to modify:

At the age of eight, my family finally bought a dog.

Obviously, the family was not eight when it bought a dog. Nor was the dog eight. The modifier *At the age of eight* is dangling there with no word to attach itself to, no word for it to modify. We can get rid of the dangling modifier by turning it into a dependent clause. (See p. 73 for a discussion of dependent clauses.)

When I was eight, my family finally bought a dog.

Here the clause has its own subject and verb—*I was*—and there's no chance of misunderstanding the sentence. Here's another dangling modifier:

After a two-hour nap, the train pulled into the station.

Did the train take a two-hour nap? Who did?

After a two-hour nap, I awoke just as the train pulled into the station.

## EXERCISES

Carefully rephrase any of the following sentences that contain misplaced or dangling modifiers. Some sentences are correct.

## Exercise 1

---

1. In tacos, my family prefers fish instead of meat.
2. After just making it to the station on time, our train had departed early.
3. Loaded with garlic, we had the best lasagna at a new restaurant last night.
4. Automatically, I always set my computer to sleep whenever I leave it unattended.
5. Even when given by strangers, everyone loves to receive gifts.
6. My brother found a twenty-dollar bill riding on the bus.
7. I have to take one of my new shirts back to the store.
8. The teacher read us an essay about crows, leaning against the whiteboard.
9. Designing my home page last night, my schoolwork never got done.
10. History students read about influential people in their textbooks who may not be famous for their contributions.

## Exercise 2

---

1. Smearred with mustard or ketchup, everyone enjoys eating corndogs.
2. Before asking for an extension, the teacher told us that we had a few extra days to finish our papers.
3. They spotted a hawk and its babies looking through their binoculars.
4. After I finished my audition, the director released everyone else.
5. I called the doctor on the roof.
6. We sat on the lawn and waited for further instructions on how to prune the roses.
7. Screeching to a stop, I got on the bus and took my seat among the rest of the passengers.
8. Without pickles, I can't eat a hamburger.
9. Given as a token of friendship, that ring means a lot to me.
10. We had to write a paragraph about the weather in our notebooks.

**Exercise 3**

---

1. Baked in an odd-shaped pan, the kids at the party still enjoyed the cake.
2. We sat quietly at our desks as we took the quiz.
3. Loaded with butter and sour cream, I looked at the baked potato and wondered how I would eat it because I am allergic to dairy products.
4. Paul contacted his travel agent through e-mail.
5. Without natural talent, the violin is almost impossible to learn.
6. Riding on a bus into town, the sunshine felt warm on my arm.
7. They were locked out of the building by accident.
8. Telling one bad joke after another, I have given up on that comedian.
9. Blue paint mixed with yellow paint usually produces green paint.
10. I loved the presents I received from my friends tied with pretty bows.

**Exercise 4**

---

1. Taken before surgery, that medicine can help your recovery.
2. Filled with the perfect amount of air, I enjoyed the way the new tires made my car handle on the road.
3. After three weeks of waiting, the textbooks that I bought online arrived just in time for the semester to begin.
4. He cooked all of his meals in his slippers.
5. The class watched the video with the door open.
6. While driving past the park, a ball bounced into the street between two parked cars.
7. Torn into tiny pieces, I didn't even want the scraps of that quiz paper near me.
8. I will take the test again tomorrow.
9. Trying to look happy, the runner-up applauded too loudly.
10. Walking in the cracks of the sidewalk, we saw tons of ants.

## Exercise 5

---

1. Feeling the thrill of a day at the amusement park, my blisters didn't bother me.
2. Full of touching scenes, my friends and I saw the new tearjerker.
3. My classmates and I always turned our essays in on time.
4. Practicing for an hour a day, her piano has improved.
5. Gasoline prices fluctuate with politics.
6. Sitting on a bench all day, an idea came to her.
7. On the road to their cousins' house, they discovered a new outlet mall.
8. He felt the pressure of trying to get a good job from his parents.
9. I enjoy talking to new people at parties.
10. Written in chalk, the notes on the board were hard to read.

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Find and correct any misplaced or dangling modifiers in the following paragraph.

Walking into my neighborhood polling place during the last election, a volunteer greeted me and checked my name and address. Being misspelled slightly on their printout, he couldn't find me at first. I pointed to what I thought was my name. At least upside down, I thought it was mine. But actually, it was another person's name. Once turned toward me, I could see the printout more clearly. My name was there, but it had an extra letter stuck on the end of it. The volunteer handed me a change-of-name form with a polite smile. I filled it out and punched my ballot. Stuck on my wall at home, I have my voting receipt to remind me to check my name carefully when the next election comes around.

### SENTENCE WRITING

Write five sentences that contain misplaced or dangling modifiers; then revise those sentences to put the modifiers where they belong. Use the examples in the explanations as models. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Following Sentence Patterns

Sentences are built according to a few basic patterns. For proof, rearrange each of the following sets of words to form a complete statement (not a question):

apples a ate raccoon the  
 the crashing beach were waves the on  
 your in am partner I lab the  
 been she school has to walking  
 you wonderful in look green

There are only one or two possible combinations for each due to English sentence patterns. Either *A raccoon ate the apples*, or *The apples ate a raccoon*, and so on. But in each case, the verb or verb phrase makes its way to the middle of the statement, and the nouns and pronouns take their places as subjects and objects.

To understand sentence patterns, you need to know that verbs can do three things. The focus is on the *double* underlined verbs below.

### 1. They can show actions:

The raccoon ate the apples.

The waves were crashing on the beach.

She has been walking to school.

### 2. They can link subjects with descriptive words:

I am your partner in the lab.

You look wonderful in green.

### 3. They can help other verbs form verb phrases:

The waves were crashing on the beach.

She has been walking to school.

Look at these sentences for more examples:

Mel grabbed a slice of pizza. (The verb *grabbed* shows Mel's action.)

His slice was the largest one in the box. (The verb *was* links *slice* with its description as *the largest one*.)

Mel had been craving pizza for a week. (The verbs *had* and *been* help the main verb *craving* in a verb phrase.)

Knowing what a verb does in a clause helps you gain an understanding of the three basic sentence patterns:

### SUBJECT + ACTION VERB + OBJECT PATTERN

Some action verbs must be followed by an object (a person, place, thing, or idea) that receives the action.

S                      AV                                      Obj  
 Sylvia completed the difficult math test. (*Sylvia completed* makes no sense without being followed by the object that she completed—*test*.)

### SUBJECT + ACTION VERB (+ NO OBJECT) PATTERN

At other times, the action verb itself completes the meaning and needs no object after it.

S                      AV  
 She celebrated at home with her family. (*She celebrated* makes sense alone. The two prepositional phrases—*at home* and *with her family*—are not needed to understand the meaning of the clause.)

### SUBJECT + LINKING VERB + DESCRIPTION PATTERN

A special kind of verb that does not show an action but links a subject with a description is called a *linking verb*. It acts like an equal sign in a clause. Learn to recognize the most common linking verbs: *is, am, are, was, were, seem, feel, appear, become, look*.

S                      LV                                      Desc  
 Sylvia is an excellent student. (*Sylvia* equals *an excellent student*.)

S                      LV                                      Desc  
 Sylvia has become very successful. (*Very successful* describes *Sylvia*.)

**NOTE**—We learned on p. 95 that a verb phrase includes a main verb and its helping verbs. Helping verbs can be used in any of the sentence patterns.

S            AV  
 Sylvia is going to Seattle for a vacation. (Here the verb *is* helps the main verb *going*, which is an action verb with no object followed by two prepositional phrases—*to Seattle* and *for a vacation*.)

The following chart outlines the patterns using short sentences that you could memorize:

### THREE BASIC SENTENCE PATTERNS

#### **S + AV + Obj**

---

Students like pizza.

#### **S + AV**

---

They relax (with their friends) (on the weekends).  
*not objects*

#### **S + LV + Desc**

---

They are young.

They look happy.

---

These are the basic patterns for most of the clauses used in English sentences. Knowing them can help you control your sentences and improve your use of words.

## EXERCISES

First, put parentheses around any prepositional phrases. Next, underline the subjects once and the verbs or verb phrases twice. Then mark the sentence patterns above the words. Remember that the patterns never mix together. For example, unlike an action verb, a linking verb will almost never be used alone (for example, "He seems."), nor will an action verb be followed by a description of the subject (for example, "She took tall."). And if there are two clauses, each one may have a different pattern. Check your answers after the first set of ten.

### Exercise 1

---

1. In the past, bells were very useful.
2. Farmers protected their animals with bells.
3. The movement of an animal triggered the sound of its bell.

4. The sound of a particular bell could signal the location of a lost cow, cat, or goat.
5. Early American sleighs and wagons also used bells as safety equipment.
6. People on country roads walked around with earmuffs or heavy hats on in winter.
7. Sleighs and their horses did not make very loud sounds on the snow.
8. Therefore, people added bells to the sleighs and horses.
9. Pedestrians moved out of the way upon hearing the bells.
10. Without bells, life in early America would have been quieter and more dangerous.

Source: *A Celebration of Bells* (Dover Books, 2008)

## Exercise 2

---

1. Erasto Mpemba is a big name in science.
2. In the early 1960s, he observed an odd phenomenon.
3. At the time, he was a high school student in Tanzania.
4. Mpemba made ice cream for a school project.
5. He boiled the milk and mixed it with the other ingredients.
6. Then he put the hot—not cold—mixture directly into the freezer.
7. The hot mixture froze faster.
8. Mpemba told his teachers and fellow students about his discovery.
9. They laughed at the idea.
10. Now all scientists call this phenomenon the “Mpemba effect.”

Sources: *Current Science*, September 8, 2006, and physicsweb.org, April 2006

## Exercise 3

---

1. In late September, the Stade de France in Paris hosted an unusual spectacle.
2. Hundreds of actors, stunt people, and extras reenacted the famous chariot race from the classic film *Ben-Hur*.

3. The same show included live gladiator fights and a galley ship assault.
4. Promoters also encouraged participation from the audience.
5. Many of the 60,000 audience members attended in traditional Roman costumes.
6. The stadium sold toga-like robes in advance along with the tickets.
7. Obviously, the live chariot race was the highlight of the show.
8. Participants in the dangerous race rehearsed for nine months.
9. The chariot race lasted for fifteen minutes.
10. It was the final event of the night.

Source: *npr.org*, Weekend Edition Saturday, Sept. 23, 2006

#### Exercise 4

---

1. Local news programs are all alike.
2. They begin with the top stories of the day.
3. These stories may be local, national, or international.
4. They might include violent crimes, traffic jams, natural disasters, and political upheavals.
5. After the top stories, one of the anchors offers a quick weather update.
6. Then a sportscaster covers the latest scores and team standings.
7. At some point, a “human interest” story lightens the mood of the broadcast.
8. And then we hear the latest entertainment news.
9. Near the end of the half hour, the weatherperson gives the full weather forecast.
10. News programs could use an update of their own.

#### Exercise 5

---

1. Charles Osgood is a writer, TV host, and radio personality.
2. He is also the editor of a book about letters.

3. The book's title is *Funny Letters from Famous People*.
4. In his book, Osgood shares hilarious letters from history.
5. Thomas Jefferson wrote to an acquaintance about rodents eating his wallet.
6. Benjamin Franklin penned the perfect recommendation letter.
7. Franklin did not know the recommended fellow at all.
8. Beethoven cursed his friend bitterly in a letter one day.
9. In a letter the following day, Beethoven praised the same friend excessively and asked him for a visit.
10. Osgood ends the book with a letter by Julia Child and includes her secrets for a long life.

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Label the sentence patterns in the following paragraphs about the history of masks from the book *Accessories of Dress*, by Katherine Lester and Bess Viola Oerke. It helps to surround prepositional phrases with parentheses and verbals with brackets first to isolate them from the main words of the sentence patterns. Then label the subjects, the verbs, and any objects after action verbs or descriptions after linking verbs (*is, am, are, was, are, become, appear, seem*, and so on).

The history of masks is one of surprising interest. Nearly every race, from the most primitive times to periods of advanced civilization, has found some use for the mask. Perhaps the painted face of a primitive warrior inspired the first mask. At any rate, many of the early tribal masks suggest the abode of a fiendish and warring spirit. In tribal and religious ceremonies, in the dance, in the drama, in peace and war, the mask has played a unique part.

One unusual use of the mask was peculiar to Rome. All families of prominence preserved waxen masks of their distinguished ancestors. These were not death masks, but portraits from life. Many families possessed large collections and looked upon them with great pride. On the occasion of a death in the family, they

brought forth these masks. During the elaborate funeral ceremonies, certain men impersonated the long line of distinguished ancestors by wearing these lifelike masks.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences describing the weather today and your feelings about it—make your sentences short and clear. Then go back and label the sentence patterns you have used. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Avoiding Clichés, Awkward Phrasing, and Wordiness

### CLICHÉS

A cliché is an expression that has been used so often it has lost its originality and effectiveness. Whoever first said “light as a feather” had thought of an original way to express lightness, but today that expression is worn out. Most of us use an occasional cliché in speaking, but clichés have no place in writing. The good writer thinks up fresh new ways to express ideas.

Here are a few clichés. Add some more to the list.

the bottom line  
older but wiser  
last but not least  
in this day and age  
different as night and day  
out of this world  
white as a ghost  
sick as a dog  
tried and true  
at the top of their lungs  
the thrill of victory  
one in a million  
busy as a bee  
easier said than done  
better late than never

Clichés lack freshness because the reader always knows what’s coming next. Can you complete these expressions?

the agony of . . .  
breathe a sigh of . . .  
lend a helping . . .  
odds and . . .  
raining cats and . . .  
as American as . . .  
been there . . .  
worth its weight . . .

Clichés are expressions too many people use. Try to avoid them in your writing.

## AWKWARD PHRASING

Another problem—awkward phrasing—comes from writing sentence structures that *no one* else would use because they break basic sentence patterns, omit necessary words, or use words incorrectly. Like clichés, awkward sentences might *sound* acceptable when spoken, but as polished writing, they are usually unacceptable.

### Awkward

There should be great efforts in terms of the communication between teachers and their students.

### Corrected

Teachers and their students must communicate.

### Awkward

During the experiment, the use of key principles was essential to ensure the success of it.

### Corrected

The experiment was a success. *or* We performed the experiment carefully.

### Awkward

My favorite was when the guy with the ball ran the wrong way all the way across the field.

### Corrected

In my favorite part, the receiver ran across the field in the wrong direction.

## WORDINESS

Good writing is concise writing. Don't use ten words if you can say it better in five. "In today's society" isn't as effective as "today," and it's a cliché. "At this point in time" could be "presently" or "now."

Another kind of wordiness comes from saying something twice. There's no need to write "in the month of August" or "9 a.m. in the morning" or "my personal opinion." August *is* a month, 9 a.m. *is* morning, and anyone's opinion *is* personal. All you need to write is "in August," "9 a.m.," and "my opinion."

Still another kind of wordiness comes from using expressions that add nothing to the meaning of the sentence. "The point is that we can't afford it" says no more than "We can't afford it."

Here is a sample wordy sentence:

The construction company actually worked on that particular building for a period of six long months.

And here it is after eliminating wordiness:

The construction company worked on that building for six months.

**WORDY WRITING**

advance planning  
an unexpected surprise  
ask a question  
at a later date  
basic fundamentals  
green in color  
but nevertheless  
combine together  
completely empty  
down below  
each and every  
end result  
fewer in number  
free gift  
in order to  
in spite of the fact that  
just exactly  
large in size  
new innovation  
on a regular basis  
past history  
rectangular in shape  
refer back  
repeat again  
serious crisis  
sufficient enough  
there in person  
two different kinds  
very unique

**CONCISE WRITING**

planning  
a surprise  
ask  
later  
fundamentals  
green  
but (or nevertheless)  
combine  
empty  
below  
each (or every)  
result  
fewer  
gift  
to  
although  
exactly  
large  
innovation  
regularly  
history  
rectangular  
refer  
repeat  
crisis  
sufficient (or enough)  
there  
two kinds  
unique

## PROOFREADING EXERCISES

The following student paragraphs contain examples of clichés, awkward phrasing, and wordiness. Revise the paragraphs so that they are concise examples of Standard Written English. When you're done, compare your revisions with the sample answers at the back of the book.

**1.** I just saw an update on the news about a famous little animal that doesn't look like anything I've ever seen before. It kind of looks like a teddy bear, some sort of monkey, and an odd type of miniature dog all rolled into one. I have found out that this little guy has his own Web site and in fact has become a famous celebrity in his own right. The name of this odd creature is Mr. Winkle. And there's no need to go hunting around for the Web address; just head to "mrwinkle.com." Visitors to his home page first see a bunch of questions flash across the screen while it's loading, questions like is it an "alien?" a "stuffed animal?" a "hamster with a permanent?" One thing I can say for sure is that Mr. Winkle is pretty cute. I can see why his owner stopped her car one day when she saw the strange-looking tiny beast walking by the side of the road and took him home with her. Since she found him on that fateful day, she has taken tons of pictures of him in quirky little costumes and in odd locations. Mr. Winkle has become an international cult phenomenon and has made personal appearances all around the world. He has even been around long enough to become semi-retired, according to Mr. Winkle's Web site. Of course, all of Mr. Winkle's pictures are available for purchase at the click of the mouse in the form of posters, notepads, and calendars. And I must say the prices are relatively reasonable.

**2.** In today's society, many shoppers at the supermarkets are on the lookout for organic meats, fruits, and vegetables. In fact, they don't draw the line at fresh foods; these same shoppers' eyes light up whenever they see an organic

label on a box, can, or any other package. I know this for a fact since I work as an employee at the supermarket in the middle of the busiest section of town. It's not only people with a lot of money that want the foods grown without pesticides and hormones. It's just about everybody that walks in the door. I guess that what's going on is that people are taking a good long look at their lives and caring about their children's eating habits too. I do have to admit that the organic eggs I buy taste pretty good when you get right down to it. Knowing that the eggs come from happy, free-ranging chickens makes me feel good about eating them. Of course, the bottom line for some people will always be price. If organic foods cost more than traditionally grown foods, some of the shoppers are going to keep passing them by on the supermarket shelves.

**3.** I have a friend who used to be one of those struggling actors who couldn't find a steady job, but now she has become a professional house sitter, and it has really paid off in more ways than one. First of all, she joined a house sitters' organization that is supposed to find out about all of the house-sitting opportunities that are available at any one time and match house sitters up with each of them. Then she landed her first house-sitting job at a house in Malibu. You're not going to believe this, but she got paid to live in a house on the beach in Malibu and even got her meals and movie rentals for free. All she had to do to do the job she was paid for was to watch out for the house and feed one cat. The cat was even an indoor cat. Now my friend is house sitting in Sedona, watching a house for friends of the same people who own the Malibu house. Well, I'll tell you, I want a job like that and am thinking seriously about trying it out for myself.

## Correcting for Parallel Structure

Your writing will be clearer and more memorable if you use parallel structure. That is, when you write two pieces of information or any kind of list, put the items in similar form. Look at this sentence, for example:

My favorite movies are comic, romantic, or the ones about outer space.

The sentence lacks parallel structure. The third item in the list doesn't match the other two. Now look at this sentence:

My favorite movies are comedies, love stories, and sci-fi fantasies.

Here the items are parallel; they are all plural nouns. Or you could write the following:

I like movies that make me laugh, that make me cry, and that make me think.

Again the sentence has parallel structure because all three items in the list are dependent clauses. Here are some more examples. Note how much easier it is to read the sentences that have parallel structure.

### WITHOUT PARALLEL STRUCTURE

I like to hike, to ski, and going sailing.

The office has run out of pens, paper, ink cartridges, and we need more toner, too.

They decided that they needed a change, that they could afford a new house, and wanted to move to Arizona.

### WITH PARALLEL STRUCTURE

I like to hike, to ski, and to sail. (all "to \_\_\_\_\_" verbs)

The office needs more pens, paper, ink cartridges, and toner. (all nouns)

They decided that they needed a change, that they could afford a new house, and that they wanted to move to Arizona. (all dependent clauses)

The parts of an outline should always be parallel. Following are two brief outlines about food irradiation. The parts of the outline on the *left* are not parallel. The first subtopic (I.) is a question; the other (II.) is just a noun. And the supporting points (A., B., C.) are written as nouns, verbs, and even clauses. The parts of the outline on the *right* are parallel. Both subtopics (I. and II.) are plural nouns, and all details (A., B., C.) are action verbs followed by objects.

**NOT PARALLEL**

- Food Irradiation
- I. How is it good?
    - A. Longer shelf life
    - B. Using fewer pesticides
    - C. Kills bacteria
  - II. Concerns
    - A. Nutritional value
    - B. Consumers are worried
    - C. Workers' safety

**PARALLEL**

- Food Irradiation
- I. Benefits
    - A. Extends shelf life
    - B. Requires fewer pesticides
    - C. Kills bacteria
  - II. Concerns
    - A. Lowers nutritional value
    - B. Alarms consumers
    - C. Endangers workers

Using parallel structure will make your writing more effective. Note the parallelism in these well-known quotations:

A place for everything and everything in its place.

*Isabella Mary Beeton*

Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for your country.

*John F. Kennedy*

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their creator with certain unalienable rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness.

*Thomas Jefferson*

## E X E R C I S E S

In the following exercises, rephrase any sentences that do not contain parallel structures. Some sentences are correct.

### Exercise 1

---

1. Mobile phones and personal digital assistants (PDAs) used to be separate devices.
2. Now that the technologies have merged, all of these units—whether iPhones, Nokias, or the devices known as BlackBerries—belong to the new category of “smart phones.”
3. Smart phones are convenient but can also be a source of distraction at times.

4. At any moment, we may receive a text message, a message sent via voicemail, another person's video taken right from a smart phone, an alarm as a reminder not to miss a dentist appointment, or even an actual phone call.
5. Smart phone noises are almost unlimited: they can buzz, chime, sneeze, drip, speak, instrumental music, and bits of popular songs to get our attention.
6. The sound systems on smart phones produce not only louder sounds than ever before, but also the sounds are clearer.
7. I always silence my phone or set it to vibrate mode during movies or when I'm in a class.
8. If I forget and the ringer is left on high, everyone in the audience of the movie or classroom full of students jumps when it starts to play.
9. Most of us rely on our smart phones to keep us connected and also for their entertainment capabilities.
10. With all of their combined features, smart phones are not only essential, but we have also become addicted to them.

## Exercise 2

---

1. Taking a basic grammar class last semester was fun, but I also found it challenging.
2. I was ready to learn about parts of speech, verb tenses, and using dependent clauses.
3. The teacher showed us how to identify subjects and labeling verbs.
4. We learned the differences between adjectives and adverbs and how to use them.
5. An adjective always adds information to a noun or could add to a pronoun.
6. Adverbs can modify verbs, adjectives, or they can even modify other adverbs.
7. I know that I learned a lot about grammar but needing to practice it in my writing.

8. Before I registered for the grammar class, I had to decide between taking a full load or to work part time and take only one or two classes.
9. I decided to work at my family's restaurant part time and focusing on the grammar class.
10. I waited on tables in the morning, going to class in the afternoon, and studied at night.

### Exercise 3

---

1. The Internet is full of information about new gadgets and using the latest technology.
2. People want to have the coolest phones, the clearest photos, and travel accessories that are the best quality.
3. One of these high-tech inventions is a new kind of wedding ring.
4. The ring doesn't use technology to help people do something more easily or living more comfortably.
5. Instead, it helps people avoid doing something, and that is not to forget their anniversary.
6. The "Remember Ring" is designed for people who love gadgets, but they tend to forget special occasions.
7. It includes several hi-tech features: a perpetually charging battery, a clock run by a microchip, and a tiny element that heats up.
8. The built-in heating element activates at a preprogrammed time and reminding the wearer about an upcoming anniversary.
9. One day before the anniversary, the ring starts to heat up to 120 degrees for ten seconds once every hour.
10. The Remember Ring comes in seven styles in both white gold and the regular yellow kind.

### Exercise 4

---

Rephrase the following list to improve the use of parallel structures. The list includes instructions on how to begin searching for ancestors—in other words, how to create a "family tree." Try to maintain similar phrasing at the beginning of the instructions and in any pairs or lists within them.

1. To begin, decide which person or the family you want to focus on.
2. Making a blank chart that includes spaces for all of a person's important information will help.
3. Then visit a relative who knows a lot of family history and hopefully someone who saves papers and mementos.
4. You should plan to spend a lot of time with any such valuable resource.
5. It is best to gather information from one individual at a time and about one person at a time.
6. Ask about every part of the person's life—marital status, children, believing in religion, working, and travel.
7. As you talk with your resources, thank them for providing you with valuable information.
8. Visit the attics or even going into the dusty old cupboards of anyone who has documents relating to your family.
9. Don't forget the local records office in the town where a relative grew up.
10. To make your family tree come together faster, you can purchase books that provide preprinted worksheets and family tree templates.

### Exercise 5

---

Rephrase the following list of recommendations to improve the use of parallel structures. Try to maintain similar phrasing at the beginning of the recommendations and in any pairs or lists within them.

1. The U.S. Surgeon General makes the following recommendations for living a healthy life and to make it a happy one, too.
2. Try to eat the right amounts of fruits and vegetables, and you shouldn't forget to eat meat and dairy products (or their vegetarian equivalents).
3. Be sure to see a doctor regularly and getting all the usual tests and check-ups.
4. Of course, it is also very important to learn about any illnesses or the health conditions that run in your family.
5. Getting enough rest and to sleep for a sufficient time each night obviously helps, too.

6. Keep in touch with your friends and the members of your family.
7. Prevent injuries that can be avoided by wearing seatbelts and other safety devices, such as helmets.
8. Limit alcohol consumption and using over-the-counter drugs.
9. Try not to smoke or breathing in second-hand smoke if you can avoid it.
10. The Surgeon General’s recommendations and the warnings that go with them make very good sense.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Proofread the following student paragraph, and revise it to correct any errors in parallel structure.

Every year in late spring, a long caravan of vehicles arrives at the park in my neighborhood. The caravan consists of a combination of trucks, campers, and vans, as well as a bunch of trailers full of folded-up kiddy rides. All of the residents and even just the people who drive by the park can tell that the fair has come to town. It isn’t a big fair, but one that is small and child-friendly. Most people remember these fairs from when they were growing up. In childhood, the rides seemed huge and scary, but when you’re an adult, they look almost silly in their smallness. As the fair is being set up in the park for a few days, the kids in the neighborhood can’t wait to get on one of those “wild” rides. What their parents start to look forward to, of course, is the “fair food”: the popcorn that comes either sweet or salty, those mouth-watering corndogs and deep-fried candy bars, and everybody loves the juicy snow cones. I can’t wait until next year’s fair; I’m getting hungry just thinking about it.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences that use parallel structure. You may choose your own subject, or you may describe the process of studying for an important test. Be sure to include pairs and lists of objects, actions, locations, or ideas. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Using Pronouns

Nouns name people, places, things, and ideas—such as *students*, *school*, *computers*, and *cyberspace*. Pronouns take the place of nouns to avoid repetition and to clarify meaning. Look at the following two sentences:

Professor Hicks worried that the students on the library tour were too loud, so Professor Hicks told the students that the tour would have to end if the students didn't quiet down.

Professor Hicks worried that the students on the library tour were too loud, so *she* told *them* that *it* would have to end if *they* didn't quiet down.

Nouns are needlessly repeated in the first example. The revised example uses pronouns in their place: *she* replaces *Professor Hicks*; *they* and *them* replace *students*, and *it* takes the place of *library tour*.

Of the many kinds of pronouns, the following cause the most difficulty because they include two ways of identifying the same person (or people), but only one form is correct in a given situation:

### SUBJECT GROUP

I  
he  
she  
we  
they

### OBJECT GROUP

me  
him  
her  
us  
them

Use a pronoun from the Subject Group in two instances:

1. Before a verb as a subject:

*He* is my cousin. (*He* is the subject of the verb *is*.)

*He* is taller than *I*. (The sentence is not written out in full. It means “*He* is taller than *I* am.” *I* is the subject of the verb *am*.)

Whenever you see *than* in a sentence, ask yourself whether a verb has been left off the end of the sentence. Add the verb, and then you'll automatically use the correct pronoun. In both speaking and writing, always add the verb. Instead of saying, “She's smarter than (I, me),” say, “She's smarter than I *am*.” Then you will use the correct pronoun.

2. After a linking verb (is, am, are, was, were) as a pronoun that renames the subject:

The one who should apologize is *he*. (*He is the one who should apologize.*  
Therefore, the pronoun from the Subject Group is used.)

The winner of the lottery was *she*. (*She was the winner of the lottery.*  
Therefore, the pronoun from the Subject Group is used.)

Modern usage allows some exceptions to this rule, however. For example, *It's me* or *It is her* (instead of the grammatically correct *It is I* and *It is she*) may be common in spoken English.

Use pronouns from the Object Group for all other purposes. In the following sentence, *me* is not the subject, nor does it rename the subject. It follows a preposition; therefore, it comes from the Object Group.

My boss went to lunch with Jenny and *me*.

A good way to tell whether to use a pronoun from the Subject Group or the Object Group is to leave out any extra name (and the word *and*). By leaving out *Jenny and*, you will say, *My boss went to lunch with me*. You would never say, *My boss went to lunch with I*.

My father and *I* play chess on Sundays. (*I* play chess on Sundays.)

*She* and her friends rented a video. (*She* rented a video.)

We saw Kevin and *them* last night. (We saw *them* last night.)

The teacher gave *us* students certificates. (Teacher gave *us* certificates.)

The coach asked Craig and *me* to wash the benches. (Coach asked *me* to wash the benches.)

### PRONOUN AGREEMENT

Just as subjects and verbs must agree, pronouns should agree with the words they refer to. If the word referred to is singular, the pronoun should be singular. If the noun referred to is plural, the pronoun should be plural.

Each classroom has its own chalkboard.

The pronoun *its* refers to the singular noun *classroom* and therefore is singular.

Both classrooms have their own chalkboards.

The pronoun *their* refers to the plural noun *classrooms* and therefore is plural.

The same rules that we use to maintain the agreement of subjects and verbs also apply to pronoun agreement. For instance, ignore any prepositional phrases that come between the word and the pronoun that takes its place.

The *box* of chocolates has lost *its* label.

*Boxes* of chocolates often lose *their* labels.

A *player* with the best concentration usually beats *her or his* opponent.

*Players* with the best concentration usually beat *their* opponents.

When a pronoun refers to more than one word joined by *and*, the pronoun is plural:

The *teacher* and the *tutors* eat *their* lunches at noon.

The *salt* and *pepper* were in *their* usual spots on the table.

However, when a pronoun refers to more than one word joined by *or*, then the word closest to the pronoun determines its form:

Either the teacher or the *tutors* eat *their* lunches in the classroom.

Either the tutors or the *teacher* eats *her* lunch in the classroom.

Today many people try to avoid gender bias by writing sentences like the following:

If anyone wants help with the assignment, he or she can visit me in my office.

If anybody calls, tell him or her that I'll be back soon.

Somebody has left his or her pager in the classroom.

But those sentences are wordy and awkward. Therefore, some people, especially in conversation, turn them into sentences that are not grammatically correct.

If anyone wants help with the assignment, they can visit me in my office.

If anybody calls, tell them that I'll be back soon.

Somebody has left their pager in the classroom.

Such ungrammatical sentences, however, are not necessary. It takes just a little thought to revise each sentence so that it avoids gender bias and is also grammatically correct:

Anyone who wants help with the assignment can visit me in my office.

Tell anybody who calls that I'll be back soon.

Somebody has left a pager in the classroom.

Probably the best way to avoid the awkward *he or she* and *him or her* is to make the words plural. Instead of writing, “Each actor was in his or her proper place on stage,” write, “All the actors were in their proper places on stage,” thus avoiding gender bias and still having a grammatically correct sentence.

### PRONOUN REFERENCE

A pronoun replaces a noun to avoid repetition, but sometimes the pronoun sounds as if it refers to the wrong word in a sentence, causing confusion. Be aware that when you write a sentence, *you* know what it means, but your reader may not. What does this sentence mean?

The students tried to use the school’s computers to access the Internet, but they were too slow, so they decided to go home.

Who or what was too slow, and who or what decided to go home? We don’t know whether the two pronouns (both *they*) refer to the students or to the computers. One way to correct such a faulty reference is to use singular and plural nouns:

The students tried to use a school computer to access the Internet, but it was too slow, so they decided to go home.

Here’s another sentence with a faulty reference:

Calvin told his father that he needed a haircut.

Who needed the haircut—Calvin or his father? One way to correct such a faulty reference is to use a direct quotation:

Calvin told his father, “You need a haircut.”

Calvin said, “Dad, I need a haircut.”

Or you could always rephrase the sentence completely:

Calvin noticed his father’s hair was sticking out in odd places, so he told his father to get a haircut.

Another kind of faulty reference is a *which* clause that appears to refer to a specific word, but it doesn’t really.

I wasn’t able to finish all the problems on the exam, which makes me worried.

The word *which* seems to replace *exam*, but it isn't the exam that makes me worried. The sentence should read

I am worried because I wasn't able to finish all the problems on the exam.

The pronoun *it* causes its own reference problems. Look at this sentence, for example:

When replacing the ink cartridge in my printer, it broke, and I had to call the technician to come and fix it.

Did the printer or the cartridge break? Here is one possible correction:

The new ink cartridge broke when I was putting it in my printer, and I had to call the technician for help.

## EXERCISES

### Exercise 1

Circle the correct pronoun. Remember the trick of leaving out the extra name to help you decide which pronoun to use. Use the correct grammatical form even though an alternate form may be acceptable in conversation.

1. My sister Helen, a few friends, and (I, me) went to the flea market over the weekend.
2. Helen is usually more successful at shopping for vintage collectibles than (I, me).
3. This time, however, both (she and I, her and me) found bargains.
4. Since Helen is less patient than (I, me), she doesn't like to stay in any stall for long.
5. Every time (she and I, me and her) have gone to the flea market before, Helen has just walked ahead of my friends and (I, me) if we stopped to dig around.
6. But the one who found the most valuable vintage item this time was (I, me).
7. Helen knows more about vintage collectibles than (I, me), so she was impressed by the original "featherweight" sewing machine found by my friends and (I, me).
8. Just between (you and me, you and I), I think Helen was really jealous.
9. A fellow shopper came up to (she and I, her and me) and asked, "Do you know how much the sewing machine is worth?"

10. After I learned that the item I had paid \$20 for was actually worth \$500, Helen said that next time we go to the flea market, she would stay with my friends and (I, me).

### Exercise 2

---

Circle the pronoun that agrees with the word the pronoun replaces. If the correct answer is *his or her*, revise the sentence to eliminate the need for this awkward expression. Check your answers as you go through the exercise.

1. A good parent gives (his or her, their) children advice.
2. Most parents don't like to interfere in (his or her, their) children's lives.
3. Giving advice is not the same as interfering, however; (it's, they're) a completely different thing.
4. A child often looks to (his or her, their) parents for guidance in difficult times.
5. For instance, a child might have encountered a bully at (his or her, their) elementary school.
6. The other schoolchildren might tell the child to keep (his or her, their) mouth shut about it.
7. A parent would probably offer (his or her, their) child very different advice—to speak to the principal about the problem right away.
8. A bully can only get away with (his or her, their) activities if everyone else is too scared or too uninformed to stop (him or her, them).
9. Dealing with bullies is just one example of how parents can offer helpful advice to (his or her, their) children.
10. Most kids would rather have parents who are involved in (his or her, their) lives than parents who only think about (himself or herself, themselves).

### Exercise 3

---

Circle the correct pronoun. Again, if the correct answer is *his or her*, revise the sentence to eliminate the need for this awkward expression.

1. No one at the zoo knows more about penguins than (she, her).
2. The visiting artist gave my classmate and (I, me) a few suggestions.

3. (You and I, You and me) are similar in many ways.
4. As we were discussing Madonna, I realized that my mother is actually younger than (she, her).
5. Each of the participants in the marathon used (his or her, their) own training methods.
6. Air conditioning companies must be very competitive in (its, their) pricing.
7. The driver mentioned in the newspaper article was (he, him).
8. Each of the art students has (his or her, their) own locker in the hallway.
9. The softball teams from each neighborhood will continue (its, their) tournament tomorrow.
10. Each citizen of a democratic country has (his or her, their) favorite candidate and can influence the election with (his or her, their) vote.

### Exercises 4 and 5

---

Some of the sentences in the next two sets aren't clear because we don't know what word the pronoun refers to. Revise such sentences, making the meaning clear. Since there are more ways than one to rewrite each sentence, yours may be as good as the ones at the back of the book. Just ask yourself whether the meaning is clear. Some sentences are correct.

### Exercise 4

---

1. The library issued new cards and mailed them out yesterday.
2. I finished my essay, sent it to the printer, and waited for it to print.
3. Angela told Karen that there was a cup of coffee on top of her car.
4. We hiked over several hills, which made us all tired and hungry.
5. Hank's dad let him drive his car to the bank.
6. When she placed her card in the ATM, it disappeared.
7. Ted told my brother that he didn't think that he should go on the field trip.
8. As we were talking on the phone, it fell.

9. Our teacher offers lots of suggestions about our drawings, which help us improve.
10. Carla asked her new boss why she couldn't work on weekends.

### Exercise 5

---

1. I put the finishing touches on my painting, placed my brushes in hot water, and moved it to the drying rack.
2. When people join in community activities, they feel more involved.
3. After I filled my car with gas, it made a funny noise.
4. Whenever I see a rainbow in the sky, it makes me think of my trip to Hawaii.
5. Members of the orchestra invited the music students to sit in their seats.
6. Steve's doctor told him to put ice on his head.
7. Many students use mechanical pencils for their precision.
8. The frosting slid off the cake as it got hotter and hotter.
9. Some students are enjoying the new computer program in the lab, but it is too simple for others.
10. The teacher ordered new textbooks, and the bookstore received them within two days.

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

The following paragraph contains errors in the use of pronouns. Find and correct the errors.

Rude drivers have one thing in common: they think that they know how to drive better than anybody else. The other day, as my friends and me were driving to school, we stopped at an intersection. A very old man who used a cane to help him walk started across it in front of my friends and I just before the light was ready to change. So we waited. But while we waited for him, a male driver behind

us started to honk his horn since he couldn't see him. I wondered, "Does he want us to hit him, or what?" Finally, it was clear. He pulled his car up beside ours, opened his window, and yelled at us before it sped away. The old man reached the other side safely, but he hardly noticed.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences about a conversation between you and someone else. Then check that your pronouns are grammatically correct, that they agree with the words they replace, and that references to specific nouns are clear. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Avoiding Shifts in Person

To understand what “person” means when using pronouns, imagine a conversation between two people about a third person. The first person speaks using “I, me, my . . .”; the second person would be called “you”; and when the two of them talked of a third person, they would say “he, she, they. . . .” You’ll never forget the idea of “person” if you remember it as a three-part conversation.

First person—*I, me, my, we, us, our*

Second person—*you, your*

Third person—*he, him, his, she, her, hers, they, them, their, one, anyone*

You may use all three of these groups of pronouns in a paper, but don’t shift from one group to another without good reason.

**Wrong:** Few people know how to manage *their* time. *One* need not be an efficiency expert to realize that *one* could get a lot more done if *he* budgeted *his* time. Nor do *you* need to work very hard to get more organized.

**Better:** *Everyone* should know how to manage *his* or *her* time. *One* need not be an efficiency expert to realize that *a person* could get a lot more done if *one* budgeted *one’s* time. Nor does *one* need to work very hard to get more organized. (Too many *one’s* in a paragraph make it sound overly formal, and they lead to the necessity of avoiding sexism by using *s/he* or *he or she*, etc. Sentences can be revised to avoid using either *you* or *one*.)

**Best:** Many of *us* don’t know how to manage *our* time. *We* need not be efficiency experts to realize that *we* could get a lot more done if *we* budgeted *our* time. Nor do *we* need to work very hard to get more organized.

Often students write *you* in a paper when they don’t really mean *you, the reader*.

You wouldn’t believe how many times I saw that movie.

Such sentences are always improved by getting rid of the *you*.

I saw that movie many times.

### PROOFREADING EXERCISES

Which of the following student paragraphs shift *unnecessarily* between first-, second-, and third-person pronouns? In those that do, revise the sentences to eliminate such shifting, thus making the entire paragraph read smoothly. One of the paragraphs is correct.

**1.** Everyone has seen those game machines that are filled with stuffed animals, and you use a crane-like device to grab hold of one and win. Kids and adults love to play these games, but did you know that a lot of children like them so much that they try to crawl up into them? Some children are successful. A recent article in the *Chippewa Herald* tells of one seven-year-old boy who made it up into the machine. The boy's father turned his back, and before you knew it, his son was sitting inside the game with all the stuffed animals around him. It took firefighters over an hour to rescue the little boy. I wonder if he got to take home the stuffed animal that he wanted.

**2.** I was reading about superstitions for my psychology class, and I learned that a lot of these beliefs concern brooms and sweeping. One superstition says that, whenever you change your residence, you should get a new broom. People should not take their old brooms with them because the brooms might carry any bad luck that was swept up at the old place and bring it to the new one. Also, if you sweep dirt out an open door, make it the back door so that the bad luck will depart forever. If you sweep dirt out the front way, the same bad luck will come right back in again. Finally, I learned never to walk across a fallen broomstick unless I never want to get married, for that is the fate for anyone who steps over a broomstick. I bet most people would be surprised by how many things can go wrong when you pick up a broom.

**3.** Most of us in America could use more vacation time. We hear about citizens of other countries getting several weeks—and sometimes even months—off every year to rest their bodies, recharge their energies, and lift their spirits. But in the United States, we have to fight for and often forfeit our one- or two-week vacations. In fact, if we complain too loudly about needing a break, we could be the newest person on the unemployment line. It's time for all of us to stand up for our right to sit down and take a rest.

## REVIEW OF SENTENCE STRUCTURE ERRORS

One sentence in each pair contains an error. Read both sentences carefully before you decide. Then write the letter of the *incorrect* sentence in the blank. Try to name the error and correct it if you can. You may find any of these errors:

<b>awk</b>	awkward phrasing
<b>cliché</b>	overused expression
<b>dm</b>	dangling modifier
<b>frag</b>	fragment
<b>mm</b>	misplaced modifier
<b>pro</b>	incorrect pronoun
<b>pro agr</b>	pronoun agreement error
<b>pro ref</b>	pronoun reference error
<b>ro</b>	run-on sentence
<b>shift</b>	shift in time or person
<b>s-v agr</b>	subject-verb agreement error
<b>wordy</b>	wordiness
//	not parallel

1. \_\_\_\_ **A.** I received a gift when I signed up for my savings account.

**B.** It was a free DVD player and I happened to need one at the time.
2. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The student who began the debate was him.

**B.** I listened to his argument and quickly countered it.
3. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Supplying food and drinks for a party cost much more than it used to.

**B.** The total could come to hundreds of dollars.
4. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The loud roar of the thunder subdued the students in the choir class.

**B.** Singing very softly, the professor could hardly hear them.
5. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Either you or I should receive that scholarship.

**B.** We both qualify for it, and no one else has turned in their application.

6. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Meg was disappointed by a new type of cereal and wrote to the company for a refund.  
**B.** The company responded with a letter of apology it contained a coupon for more cereal.
7. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Sometimes I have fun doing nothing all day with a friend.  
**B.** These good times happen when you least expect them.
8. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The cab driver helped my father with his bags.  
**B.** He put his suitcases in the trunk and closed it.
9. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Katrina plays the cello, flute, and can also play the piano.  
**B.** She learned them simultaneously; now she's a professional musician.
10. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My parents made a promise to my brother and I.  
**B.** This summer, we will all visit Yosemite.
11. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Gift cards have become popular as birthday presents and graduations.  
**B.** The cards are redeemable in stores and restaurants or online.
12. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The usher pointed to our seats in the front row.  
**B.** I thought it would be a good location, but the seats are too close.
13. \_\_\_\_ **A.** Since most mobile phones display the time.  
**B.** Many people don't wear watches any more.
14. \_\_\_\_ **A.** My Chinese tutor knows more characters than I.  
**B.** However, I write my characters more neatly than him.
15. \_\_\_\_ **A.** The campus bookstore can be a challenging place to shop.  
**B.** The list of books for different classes are not always complete or correct.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

The following is an insightful student essay. Revise it to eliminate wordiness and to correct any errors in sentence structure.

## Getting Involved

Getting involved in other people's business can be a right and a wrong thing. It all depends on the relationship you have with that person and what situation that person is going through. For example, a friend of yours is having trouble in a bad relationship and you are concerned about their well-being. Getting involved not only shows that as a friend you love them, but it can help them solve their problems.

On the other hand, some people just like to be nosy. I feel that most people who do get involved in other people's business just for fun have a boring life. They need to know about others so that their lives can be more interesting. I have been in many situations where peers have tried to learn about my life and problems so that they could show and tell. All of the things they said turned into rumors.

Since I have learned from others' mistakes about not minding your own business, I would never get involved in other people's business. If it is not going to benefit them in some way. Therefore, people should better their own lives and not worry about anyone else's. This would make the world a better place.

# Punctuation and Capital Letters

## Period, Question Mark, Exclamation Point, Semicolon, Colon, Dash

Every mark of punctuation should help the reader. Here are the rules for six marks of punctuation. The first three you have known for a long time and probably have no trouble with. The one about semicolons you learned when you studied independent clauses (p. 87). The ones about the colon and the dash may be less familiar.

**Put a period (.) at the end of a sentence and after most abbreviations.**

The students elected Ms. Daniels to represent the school.

Sept. Mon. in. sq. ft. lbs.

**Put a question mark (?) after a direct question but not after an indirect one.**

Will we be able to use our notes during the test? (direct)

I wonder if we will be able to use our notes during the test. (indirect)

**Put an exclamation point (!) after an expression that shows strong emotion. This mark is used mostly in dialogue or informal correspondence.**

I can't believe I did so well on my first exam!

**Put a semicolon (;) between two independent clauses in a sentence unless they are joined by one of the connecting words *for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so*.**

My mother cosigned for a loan; now I have my own car.

Some careers go in and out of fashion; however, people will always need teachers.

To be sure that you are using a semicolon correctly, see if a period and capital letter can be used in its place. If they can, you are putting the semicolon in the right spot.

My mother cosigned for a loan. Now I have my own car.

Some careers go in and out of fashion. However, people will always need teachers.

**Put a colon (:) after a complete statement that introduces one of the following elements: a name, a list, a quotation, or an explanation.**

The company announced its Employee-of-the-Month: Lee Jones. (The sentence before the colon introduces the name that follows it.)

That truck comes in the following colors: red, black, blue, and silver. (The complete statement before the colon introduces the list that follows it.)

That truck comes in red, black, blue, and silver. (Here the list is simply part of the sentence. There is no complete statement used to introduce the list, so it does not need a colon.)

Thoreau had this to say about time: “Time is but the stream I go a-fishin in.” (The writer introduces the quotation with a complete statement. Therefore, a colon comes between them.)

Thoreau said, “Time is but the stream I go a-fishin in.” (Here the writer leads directly into the quotation; therefore, no colon—just a comma—comes between them.)

**Use dashes (—) to isolate inserted information, to signal an abrupt change of thought, or to emphasize what follows.**

Lee Jones—March’s Employee-of-the-Month—received his own special parking space.

I found out today—or was it yesterday?—that I have inherited a fortune.

We have exciting news for you—we’re moving!

## EXERCISES

### Exercises 1 and 2

---

Add to these sentences the necessary end punctuation (periods, question marks, and exclamation points). The semicolons, colons, dashes, and commas used within the sentences are correct and do not need to be changed. Pay close attention to them, however, to help with further exercises.

## Exercise 1

---

1. I need to buy a cake for my boss's retirement party, and I wonder what size cake I should order
2. Usually I see rectangular flat cakes at such celebrations; however, I would like to make this party different
3. Shirley is the name of my boss, but the last thing I want is a plain cake with "Happy Retirement, Shirley" written on it
4. I consider Shirley the best boss I'll ever have; why shouldn't she have the best retirement party ever
5. Maybe I should go to the bakery that provided the cake for my friend Lauren's graduation party
6. Lauren's cake was shaped like a huge graduation cap; the mortarboard was made of poured sugar, and even the tassel was edible
7. Underneath the cap-cake was a diploma created out of fondant, and it had real words written in black frosting and a gold seal—just like the seal on Lauren's real diploma
8. Since Shirley is mostly associated with the cowboy boots that we sell at our store, I'll have the cake made in the shape of a pair of her favorite boots
9. That way, there will be enough cake for everyone, and Shirley will have a special cake to remember forever
10. Now I just have to decide which boots to pattern the cake after, but that's the fun part, isn't it

## Exercise 2

---

1. What have spiders done for you lately
2. In the near future, a spider may save your life
3. Researchers in New York have discovered the healing power of one species in particular: the Chilean Rose tarantula
4. This spider's venom includes a substance that could stop a human's heart attack once it begins

5. The substance has the ability to restore the rhythm of a heart that has stopped beating
6. A scientist in Connecticut is experimenting with the killing power of another arachnid; the creature he is studying is the Australian funnel-web spider
7. Currently, pesticides that destroy insects on crops also end up killing animals accidentally
8. The funnel-web spider's venom is lethal to unwanted insects; however, it's harmless to animals
9. Scientists would have to reproduce the funnel-web spider's venom artificially in order to have enough to use in fields
10. As a result of these studies into the power of spider venom, you may live longer and enjoy pesticide-free foods

Source: *Discover*, September 2000

### Exercises 3 and 4

---

Add any necessary semicolons, colons, and dashes to these sentences. The commas and end punctuation are correct and do not need to be changed.

#### Exercise 3

---

1. Chang and Eng were a famous pair of conjoined twins they lived in the 1800s.
2. They were known as the "Siamese twins" because they were born in Siam Siam is now called Thailand.
3. Chang and Eng traveled the world as celebrities of sorts and eventually made enough money to settle down.
4. They became citizens of the United States and bought farmland in North Carolina.
5. The twins enjoyed the same pastimes smoking cigars, reading books, and buying clothes.
6. Eng was known for the following having a calm disposition and playing endless games of poker.
7. Chang unlike his brother could lose his temper easily.

8. Chang and Eng married two sisters from the same family Adelaide and Sarah.
9. The two couples lived together at first then the twins divided their time between two houses one for each of their growing families.
10. The famous twins had a total 21 children their descendents are still a rich part of the Mount Airy community in North Carolina.

*Source: National Geographic, June 2006*

#### **Exercise 4**

---

1. Thunderstorms are spectacular demonstrations of nature's power.
2. Do you know where the safest places are during a thunderstorm?
3. One relatively safe place is inside a building that has plumbing pipes or electrical wires those channels can absorb the electrical energy unleashed by lightning.
4. Of course, once inside such a building, people should stay away from the end sources of plumbing and wiring faucets, hoses, phone receivers, and computer terminals.
5. Buildings without pipes or wires are not safe shelters during lightning strikes these might include pergolas, dugouts, and tents.
6. Outside, lightning can move over the ground therefore, you should be aware of a position that emergency officials call the "lightning squat."
7. This emergency position involves curling up into the smallest ball you can while balancing on the balls of your feet and covering your ears.
8. That way, there is less of you in contact with the ground if lightning strikes.
9. Lightning is electrical energy consequently, it can travel far from the actual storm clouds.
10. In fact, lightning has struck as far as twenty miles away from the storm that caused it.

*Source: Current Health, October 2003*

### Exercise 5

Add the necessary periods, question marks, exclamation points, semicolons, colons, and dashes. Any commas in the sentences are correct and should not be changed.

1. "Am I going to get old like Grandpa"
2. This question is typical of the ones children ask their parents about aging luckily, there are books that help parents answer them
3. Lynne S. Dumas wrote the book *Talking with Your Child about a Troubled World* in it, she discusses children's concerns and suggests ways of dealing with them
4. In response to the question about getting old "like Grandpa," Dumas stresses one main point be positive
5. Too often, Dumas says, parents pass their own fears on to children parents who focus on the negative aspects of aging will probably have children who worry about growing old
6. Other subjects homelessness, for instance require special consideration for parents
7. Dumas explains that children carefully observe how parents deal with a person asking for spare change or offering to wash windshields for money
8. The unplanned nature of these encounters often catches parents off guard therefore, they should try to prepare a uniform response to such situations
9. Dumas also suggests that parents take positive action involving children in charitable donations and activities, for example in order to illustrate their compassion for the homeless
10. The most important aspect in communicating with children is honesty the second and third most important are patience and understanding

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Can you find the punctuation errors in this student paragraph? They all involve periods, question marks, exclamation points, semicolons, colons, and dashes. Any commas used within the sentences are correct and should not be changed.

The ingredients you will need to make quick, delicious spaghetti sauce include onions, garlic, mushrooms, and canned tomato sauce meat is optional. First, at the bottom of a big heavy pot on high heat, you should sauté the onions, garlic, and mushrooms in olive oil: then put the vegetables aside and brown the meat, if any. Once the meat has browned nicely, it's time to add the tomato sauce and seasonings. You can use oregano and basil; or just salt and pepper. Actually, you can use any blend of spices: to suit your taste. Try adding a teaspoon or even a tablespoon of sugar to keep the sauce from being bitter. Next, return the sautéed vegetables to the pot. Cook the sauce mixture over medium heat until it begins to boil. Finally, lower the temperature and simmer the sauce until it achieves the perfect consistency thick and glossy. Serve the sauce on top of any kind of cooked pasta.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences of your own that use periods, question marks, exclamation points, semicolons, colons, and dashes correctly. Imitate the examples used in the explanations if necessary. Write about an interesting assignment you have done for a class, or choose your own topic. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Comma Rules 1, 2, and 3

Commas and other pieces of punctuation guide the reader through your sentence structures in the same way that signs guide drivers on the highway. Imagine what effects misplaced or incorrect road signs would have. Yet students often randomly place commas in their sentences. Try not to use a comma unless you know there is a need for it. Memorize this rhyme about comma use: *When in doubt, leave it out.*

Among all of the comma rules, six are most important. Learn these six rules, and your writing will be easier to read. You have already studied the first rule on pages 88–89.

### 1. Put a comma before *for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so* (remember these seven words as the *fanboys*) when they connect two independent clauses.

Our neighbors recently bought a minivan, and now they take short trips every weekend.

We wrote our paragraphs in class today, but the teacher forgot to collect them.

She was recently promoted, so she has moved to a better office.

If you use a comma alone between two independent clauses, the result is an error called a *comma splice*.

The cake looked delicious, it tasted good too. (comma splice)

The cake looked delicious, and it tasted good too. (correct)

Before using a comma, be sure such words do connect two independent clauses. The following sentence is merely one independent clause with one subject and two verbs. Therefore, no comma should be used.

The ice cream looked delicious and tasted good too.

### 2. Use a comma to separate three or more items in a series.

Students in literature classes are reading short stories, poems, and plays.

Today I did my laundry, washed my car, and cleaned my room.

Occasionally, writers leave out the comma before the *and* connecting the last two items in a series, but it is more common to use it to separate all of the items equally. Some words work together and don't need commas between them even though they do make up a kind of series.

The team members wanted to wear their brand new green uniforms.

The bright white sunlight made the room glow.

To see whether a comma is needed between words in a series, ask yourself whether *and* could be used naturally between them. It would sound all right to say *short stories and poems and plays*; therefore, commas are used. But it would not sound right to say *brand and new and green uniforms* or *bright and white sunlight*; therefore, no commas are used.

If an address or date is used in a sentence, put a comma after every item, including the last.

My father was born on August 19, 1961, in Mesa, Arizona, and grew up there.  
Shelby lived in St. Louis, Missouri, for two years.

When only the month and year are used in a date, no commas are needed.

My aunt graduated from Yale in May 1999.

**3. Put a comma after an introductory expression (a word, a phrase, or a dependent clause) or before a comment or question tagged onto the end.**

Finally, he was able to get through to his insurance company.

During her last performance, the actress fell and broke her foot.

Once I have finished my homework, I will call you.

He said he needed to ruminate, whatever that means.

The new chairs aren't very comfortable, are they?

## EXERCISES

Add commas to the following sentences according to the comma rule stated in the directions for each exercise. Any other punctuation already in the sentences is correct. Check your answers after the first set.

### Exercise 1

---

Add commas according to Comma Rule 1. Put a comma before a *fanboys* when it connects two independent clauses. Some sentences are correct.

1. The young actor named Sabu began his career in 1937 and he was famous for his unique background and abilities.
2. He had an amazing rapport with animals and an athletic and energetic acting style.
3. An American filmmaker discovered Sabu as a young boy in Southern India and asked him to be in a film working with elephants.

4. In real life, Sabu understood elephants very well for his father was an owner and trainer of elephants.
5. Sabu's first film was called *The Elephant Boy* and it made him an instant celebrity.
6. He went on to star in fantasy films like *The Thief of Bagdad* and *Arabian Nights*.
7. Sabu played exotic, friendly characters in these two films and the special effects matched today's standards and in some ways exceeded them.
8. But Sabu's most celebrated role was that of Mowgli in the live-action 1942 film version of Rudyard Kipling's *The Jungle Book*.
9. *The Jungle Book* starring Sabu was made twenty-five years before Disney's animated version but it captured the essence of the mysterious jungle even more vividly with real actors and animals.
10. In one scene, Sabu rides into the village on a galloping water buffalo and calmly slides off the animal to deliver his dialogue.

## Exercise 2

Add commas according to Comma Rule 2. Use a comma to separate three or more items in a series. Some sentences may not need any more commas.

1. Whenever I need to borrow some blueberries an onion or a teaspoon of ginger, I go next door to my neighbor's apartment.
2. My neighbor's name is Albert, and he is originally from Belgium.
3. Albert always has the season's best fruits the tastiest vegetables and the freshest spices.
4. Albert feels comfortable borrowing things from me, too.
5. He doesn't ask for blueberries onions or ginger, but he will ask to borrow a hammer a wrench or a Phillips-head screwdriver.
6. Albert and I have learned to offset each other's household purchases perfectly.
7. If I buy myself a new dustpan broom or rake, I buy an extra one for Albert.
8. When he visits the farmer's market on Thursdays, Albert picks up an extra basket of strawberries for me.
9. I could not have planned to have a better next-door neighbor.
10. Whatever one of us doesn't buy, the other one will.

### Exercise 3

---

Add commas according to Comma Rule 3. Put a comma after introductory expressions or before tag comments or questions.

1. As if people didn't have enough to worry about Melinda Muse has written a book called *I'm Afraid, You're Afraid: 448 Things to Fear and Why*.
2. In her book Muse points out the dangers of common places, objects, foods, months, days, and activities.
3. If people plan a trip to Vegas they should worry because paramedics can't get to ailing gamblers due to the crowds and huge size of the buildings.
4. For another dangerous spot consider the beauty parlor, where people suffer strokes caused by leaning their heads back too far into the shampoo sink.
5. If new clothes are not washed before they are worn they may transfer dangerous chemicals to the wearers' eyes, skin, and lungs.
6. Among foods to be avoided grapefruit juice can interfere with certain medications' effectiveness, and nutmeg contains hallucinogenic substances.
7. Of all the months July ranks highest in certain kinds of accidental injuries and poisonings due to Independence Day celebrations and other summer activities.
8. Being linked with more suicides and heart attacks than any other Mondays are the most dangerous days of the week.
9. Even joining a large choir can permanently damage singers' ears.
10. After reading *I'm Afraid, You're Afraid* it's possible to be afraid of almost everything.

### Exercise 4

---

Add commas according to the first three comma rules.

1. Speaking of worst-case scenarios there is a book about how to survive them and it's called *The Worst-Case Scenario Survival Handbook*.
2. The coauthors of this self-help book are aware that most of us will never have to overpower an alligator or make an emergency landing on an airplane yet they want us to be prepared nonetheless.

3. In the “About the Authors” section of the book readers learn that Joshua Piven is a first-time writer but he has survived encounters with robbers muggers and stalled subway trains.
4. About Piven’s coauthor we discover that David Borgenicht has written two other books and has had his share of worst-case scenarios especially while traveling.
5. Although the overall tone of the book is somewhat humorous because it covers such outlandish topics the information it shares is deadly serious and could save a life.
6. There are drawings in each section of the book to help the reader picture the emergency and how to survive it.
7. One of the best examples illustrates a way to avoid being attacked by a mountain lion and that is to try to appear as large as possible so the drawing shows a man holding the sides of his jacket out wide like bat wings to scare the lion away.
8. If readers wonder whether they can trust the advice on escaping from quicksand they can just flip to the list of sources consulted for each section in this case an expert on the physics of natural phenomena at the University of Sydney Australia.
9. Wisely Piven and Borgenicht begin the book by warning readers to seek professional help whenever possible instead of trying the survival techniques themselves.
10. The authors know that if people go looking for trouble they’ll probably find it.

### Exercise 5

---

Add commas according to the first three comma rules.

1. Fish may be considered “brain food” but I’ve never liked it.
2. While everyone is saying how delicious a big salmon steak is or how yummy the shrimp tastes you’ll find me grimacing and munching on a piece of bread and butter.
3. Part of the problem with fish is the smell but my friends who love to eat fish also love the smell of fish cooking.

4. I always thought that was strange but it makes sense doesn't it?
5. If someone hates the taste of onions that person probably also hates the smell of onions cooking.
6. Come to think of it my husband hates to eat sweets and doesn't like the smell of them either.
7. When we walk into a bakery together he practically has to hold his nose the way I would in a fish market.
8. To me that's odd but my aversion must be just as odd to someone who loves fish.
9. Our daughter loves the taste of bacon but she hates the smell of bacon frying.
10. So I guess there are exceptions to the agreement of our senses of taste and smell.

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

We have omitted the commas from the following excerpt about social behavior in the United States. It is from the book *Behave Yourself: The Essential Guide to International Etiquette* by Michael Powell. After you have added commas according to all six comma rules, check your answers at the back of the book. Remember the rule of thumb about placing any comma in a sentence: "When in doubt, leave it out."

Use a person's title and last name until you are invited to use first names which will invariably be immediately. This is not a sign of intimacy; Americans feel that the use of last names is so formal that it is uncomfortable to address others in this manner. You will find that Americans almost always introduce themselves or others using first names even in business. If you are introduced to someone by his or her first name then it is perfectly acceptable to use the first name.

Punctuality is important in business. Always phone ahead if you are going to be more than 10 minutes late. Likewise punctuality is valued for prestigious social engagements. However punctuality is considerably more flexible for casual gatherings among friends; being a few minutes late is the norm and it's not

unheard of for people to trickle into a casual party among friends anywhere from 15 minutes to an hour after the designated starting time of the party.

Americans are generally very gregarious and welcoming. Frequent smiling is a cultural norm an important social custom that should not be misinterpreted as superficiality. Maintain a personal distance of at least one arm's length.

Conversation can be animated quite loud and refreshingly direct. Although in some situations political correctness obliges people to choose their words carefully so they won't offend anyone in others you will meet some of the most straightforward people in the world. The freedom to express ones opinions is highly prized in the United States.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Combine the following sets of sentences in different ways using all of the first three comma rules. You may need to reorder the details and change the phrasing. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

The final exam was long and difficult.

Most students were unable to finish it.

The gardeners arrive at 7:00 in the morning.

They start using their lawnmowers and other loud machines.

No one in the neighborhood can sleep in anymore.

I grew up in the 1960s.

People rode in cars without seatbelts.

There were no special car seats for children.

Air bags had not been introduced yet.

## Comma Rules 4, 5, and 6

The next three comma rules all involve using pairs of commas to enclose what we like to call “scoopable” elements. Scoopable elements are certain words, phrases, and clauses that can be taken out of the middle of a sentence without affecting its meaning. Notice that the comma (,) is shaped somewhat like the tip of an ice cream scoop? Let this similarity help you remember to use commas to enclose *scoopable* elements. Two commas are used, one before and one after, to show where scoopable elements begin and where they end.

### 4. Put commas around the name of a person spoken to.

Did you know, Danielle, that you left your backpack at the library?

We regret to inform you, Mr. Davis, that your policy has been canceled.

### 5. Put commas around expressions that interrupt the flow of the sentence (such as *however*, *moreover*, *therefore*, *of course*, *by the way*, *on the other hand*, *I believe*, *I think*).

I know, of course, that I have missed the deadline.

They will try, therefore, to use the rest of their time wisely.

Today's exam, I think, was only a practice test.

Read the previous examples *aloud*, and you'll hear how these expressions surrounded by commas interrupt the flow of the sentence. Sometimes such expressions flow smoothly into the sentence and don't need commas around them.

Of course he checked to see if there were any rooms available.

We therefore decided to stay out of it.

I think you made the right decision.

Remember that when a word like *however* comes between two independent clauses, that word needs a semicolon before it. It may also have a comma after it, especially if there seems to be a pause between the word and the rest of the sentence. (See p. 87.)

The bus was late; *however*, we still made it to the museum before it closed.

I am improving my study habits; *furthermore*, I am getting better grades.

She was interested in journalism; *therefore*, she took a job at a local newspaper.

I spent hours studying for the test; *finally*, I felt prepared.

Thus, you've seen a word like *however* or *therefore* used in three ways:

1. as a “scoopable” word that interrupts the flow of the sentence (needs commas around it)
2. as a word that flows into the sentence (no commas needed)
3. as a connecting word between two independent clauses (semicolon before and often a comma after)

**6. Put commas around additional information that is not needed in a sentence.**

Certain additional information is “scoopable” and should be surrounded by commas whenever the meaning would be clear without it. Look at the following sentence:

Maxine Taylor, who organized the fund-raiser, will introduce the candidates.

The clause *who organized the fund-raiser* is not needed in the sentence. Without it, we still know exactly who the sentence is about and what she is going to do: “Maxine Taylor will introduce the candidates.” Therefore, the additional information is surrounded by commas to show that it is scoopable. Now read the following sentence:

The person who organized the fund-raiser will introduce the candidates.

The clause *who organized the fund-raiser* is necessary in this sentence. Without it, the sentence would read as follows: “The person will introduce the candidates.” The reader would have no idea *which person*. The clause *who organized the fund-raiser* cannot be left out because it identifies which person. Therefore, the clause is not scoopable, and no commas are used around it. Here is another sample sentence:

*Hamlet*, Shakespeare’s famous play, has been made into a movie many times.

The additional information *Shakespeare’s famous play* is scoopable. It could be left out, and we would still understand the meaning of the sentence: “*Hamlet* has been made into a movie many times.” Therefore, the commas surround the scoopable information to show that it could be taken out. Here is the same sentence with the information reversed:

Shakespeare’s famous play *Hamlet* has been made into a movie many times.

Here the title of the play is necessary. Without it, the sentence would read as follows: “Shakespeare’s famous play has been made into a movie many times.” The reader would have no idea which of Shakespeare’s famous plays has been made into a movie many times. Therefore, the title is not scoopable, and commas should not be used around it.

The trick in deciding whether additional information is scoopable or not is to remember, “If I can scoop it out and still understand the sentence, I’ll put commas around it.”

## EXERCISES

Surround any “scoopable” elements with commas according to Comma Rules 4, 5, and 6. Any commas already in the sentences follow Comma Rules 1, 2, and 3. Some sentences are correct. Check your answers after the first set.

### Exercise 1

---

1. Any car that has a tracking device is easier to find if it’s ever stolen.
2. My car which luckily had a tracking device was found within an hour of being stolen.
3. Ms. Tate my creative writing teacher has published several of her own short stories.
4. The instructor who teaches the creative writing class has published several of her own short stories.
5. I sense that Henry doesn’t like to talk to Jenny.
6. Jenny on the other hand seems to enjoy Henry’s sense of humor.
7. The lion a powerful and majestic animal symbolizes strength and independence.
8. The white lion cubs that were born in December are already on display at the zoo.
9. Students who volunteered to decorate the auditorium would be allowed to listen to the band’s rehearsal.
10. Mark and Monica who volunteered to decorate the stage were able to help the band choose its songs.

### Exercise 2

---

1. We hope of course that people will honor their summons for jury duty.
2. Of course we hope that people will honor their summons for jury duty.

3. People who serve as jurors every time they're called deserve our appreciation.
4. Thelma and Trevor Martin who serve as jurors every time they're called deserve our appreciation.
5. We should therefore be as understanding as we can be about the slow legal process.
6. Therefore we should be as understanding as we can be about the slow legal process.
7. A legal system that believes people are innocent until proven guilty must offer a trial-by-jury option.
8. The U.S. legal system which believes people are innocent until proven guilty offers a trial-by-jury option.
9. With that option, we hope that no one will receive an unfair trial.
10. With that option, no one we hope will receive an unfair trial.

### Exercise 3

---

1. Bobble-head dolls those figurines with heads that bob up and down have become the souvenir of choice for many modern teams and companies.
2. The history of the bobble-head doll might go back as far as the seventeenth century when figurines with moving heads were popular in China.
3. Others say these types of ceramic nodding figures called "nodder" dolls in Europe originated there in the 1800s.
4. Much more recently in the 1960s to be exact Japan began producing what some call "bobbinheads" as souvenirs to sell at baseball parks in the United States.
5. The first four baseball noddors celebrated the careers of Roberto Clemente, Mickey Mantle, Roger Maris, and Willie Mays.
6. Two of the most famous people of the twentieth century President Kennedy and Elvis Presley were immortalized as bobble-head dolls.

7. In the year 2000, Cal Ripken's nodding doll was issued just prior to his retirement.
8. Now some cereal boxes traditionally the showplaces for athletic triumphs include tiny bobble-heads as prizes inside.
9. Even William Rehnquist Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court had a bobble-head doll in his likeness.
10. The Rehnquist bobble-head a must-have for any nodding-doll collector was commissioned by a law journal to encourage people to read about legal issues.

Source: [www.charleston.net](http://www.charleston.net), July 13, 2003

#### Exercise 4

---

1. The story of Dracula the frightening Prince Vlad Tepes has been fascinating people across the world for hundreds of years.
2. He was held as a prisoner in Bran Castle a medieval fortress in Transylvania in the 15th century.
3. Bran Castle also called Dracula's Castle has become a popular tourist attraction.
4. For the past forty years, people who traveled to Romania have been visiting the museum at Bran Castle.
5. The towers and Transylvanian charm of the castle have also made it the perfect setting for many Dracula movies.
6. The owners of Dracula's Castle have changed throughout the years.
7. It was given to Marie Queen of Romania in 1920.
8. But the political landscape changed, and the castle became national property in 1948.
9. A law that was passed in 2005 returned Bran Castle to the ancestors of the Romanian royal family.
10. Queen Marie's grandson Dominic von Habsburg now owns the castle, along with his two sisters Maria Magdalena and Elizabeth.

Source: *Renaissance Magazine*, Issue #51 (2006)

## Exercise 5

---

1. One of the weirdest competitions on earth the Wife Carrying World Championships takes place in Finland once a year.
2. These load-carrying races which may have begun as training rituals for Finnish soldiers have become popular in the United States and all over the world.
3. Each pair of participants made up of one man and one “wife” has to make it through an obstacle course in the shortest time possible.
4. The “wife” half of the team has to weigh at least 49 kilos 108 pounds.
5. She does not have to be married to the man who carries her; she can indeed be someone else’s wife or even unmarried.
6. The wife-carrying course includes two sections a part on land and a part in water.
7. The contest rules are few: make it to the finish line first, have fun, and don’t drop the wife along the way.
8. The wife-dropping penalty which is fifteen seconds added to the pair’s time is enough to disqualify most couples.
9. Contest officials allow one piece of equipment a belt that the man can wear so that the “wife” has something to hold on to during the race.
10. The winning couple wins a prize, but the coveted title Wife Carrying World Champion is reward enough for most.

Source: [www.sonkajarvi.fi](http://www.sonkajarvi.fi)

## PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Insert the necessary commas into this paragraph according to Comma Rules 4, 5, and 6.

There are two types of punctuation internal punctuation and end punctuation. Internal punctuation is used within the sentence, and end punctuation is used at the end of the sentence. There are six main rules for the placement

of commas the most important pieces of internal punctuation. Semicolons the next most important have two main functions. Their primary function separating two independent clauses is also the most widely known. A lesser-known need for semicolons to separate items in a list already containing commas occurs rarely in college writing. Colons and dashes have special uses within sentences. And of the three pieces of end punctuation—periods, question marks, and exclamation points—one is obviously the most common. That piece is the period which signals the end of the majority of English sentences.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Combine the following sets of sentences in different ways according to Comma Rules 4, 5, and 6. Try to combine each set in a way that needs commas and in a way that doesn't need commas. In other words, try to make an element "scoopable" in one sentence and not "scoopable" in another. You may reorder the details and change the phrasing as you wish. Sample responses are provided in the Answers section.

I think about the average student's life.

The average student's life is full of distractions and extraneous information from the Internet and many other forms of media.

She plans to buy herself an expensive watch.

It is sold by Tag Heuer.

Tag Heuer is her favorite brand.

Only two people were in the store when the commercial was filmed.

One was the manager.

The other was an actor.

## REVIEW OF THE COMMA

### SIX COMMA RULES

1. Put a comma before *for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so* when they connect two independent clauses.
2. Put a comma between three or more items in a series.
3. Put a comma after an introductory expression or before a tag comment or question.
4. Put commas around the name of a person spoken to.
5. Put commas around words like *however* or *therefore* when they interrupt a sentence.
6. Put commas around unnecessary additional (“scoopable”) information.

## COMMA REVIEW EXERCISE

Add the missing commas, and identify which one of the six comma rules applies in the brackets at the end of each sentence. Each of the six sentences illustrates a different rule.

We’re writing you this e-mail Lena to give you directions to the reunion this weekend. [ ] We know that you will be driving with a few others but we want to be sure that everyone knows the way. [ ] When we contacted some of our classmates over the Internet several of the messages were returned as “undeliverable.” [ ] We hope therefore that this one gets through to you. [ ] We can’t wait to see everyone again: Michelle Tom Olivia and Brad. [ ] Dr. Milford our favorite professor will be there to welcome all of the returning students. [ ]

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write at least one sentence of your own to demonstrate each of the six comma rules. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Quotation Marks and Underlining/*Italics*

**Put quotation marks around a direct quotation (the exact words of a speaker) but not around an indirect quotation.**

The officer said, “Please show me your driver’s license.” (a direct quotation)

The officer asked to see my driver’s license. (an indirect quotation)

If the speaker says more than one sentence, quotation marks are used before and after the entire speech.

She said, “One of your brake lights is out. You need to take care of the problem right away.”

If the quotation begins the sentence, the words telling who is speaking are set off with a comma unless the quotation ends with a question mark or an exclamation point.

“I didn’t even know it was broken,” I said.

“Do you have any questions?” she asked.

“You mean I can go!” I shouted.

“Yes, consider this just a warning,” she said.

Notice that each of the previous quotations begins with a capital letter. But when a quotation is interrupted by an identifying phrase, the second part doesn’t begin with a capital letter unless the second part is a new sentence.

“If you knew how much time I spent on the essay,” the student said, “you would give me an A.”

“A chef might work on a meal for days,” the teacher replied. “That doesn’t mean the results will taste good.”

**Put quotation marks around the titles of short stories, poems, songs, essays, TV program episodes, or other short works.**

I couldn’t sleep after I read “The Lottery,” a short story by Shirley Jackson.

My favorite Woodie Guthrie song is “This Land Is Your Land.”

We had to read George Orwell’s essay “A Hanging” for my speech class.

Jerry Seinfeld’s troubles in “The Puffy Shirt” episode are some of the funniest moments in TV history.

**Underline titles of longer works such as books, newspapers, magazines, plays, record albums or CDs, movies, or the titles of TV or radio series.**

The Color Purple is a novel by Alice Walker.

I read about the latest discovery of dinosaur footprints in Newsweek.

Gone with the Wind was re-released in movie theaters in 1998.

My mother listens to The Writer's Almanac on the radio every morning.

You may choose to *italicize* instead of underlining if your word processor gives you the option. Just be consistent throughout any paper in which you use underlining or italics.

*The Color Purple* is a novel by Alice Walker.

I read about the latest discovery of dinosaur footprints in *Newsweek*.

*Gone with the Wind* was re-released in movie theaters in 1998.

My mother listens to *The Writer's Almanac* on the radio every morning.

## EXERCISES

Correctly punctuate quotations and titles in the following sentences by adding quotation marks or underlining (*italics*).

### Exercise 1

---

1. A film crew was setting up in the park by my house, and I saw a sign that said, Extras holding.
2. I found someone who didn't look too busy and asked, Are you looking for extras?
3. Yes, she answered, if you want to be in a crowd scene, just fill out the paperwork and sit over there.
4. I didn't even think twice and told her, Sure, I'd love to be in it.
5. I found out from another extra that we were filming the pilot for a new TV comedy series along the lines of Desperate Housewives.
6. When I asked what I was supposed to do, he said, They'll give you a picket sign, and you'll wave it. That's it.
7. I held my sign that said, No more cuts to education! and waved it when I was told to.

8. While it was happening, I kept telling myself, You're going to be on TV—just try not to look stupid.
9. I heard someone ask, Did anyone else hear that the title of the series is going to be Tangle Square?
10. We all shook our heads; then I added, But that's an interesting title, if it's true.

## Exercise 2

---

1. I am reading a book called *Don't: A Manual of Mistakes & Improprieties More or Less Prevalent in Conduct and Speech*.
2. The book's contents are divided into chapters with titles such as *At Table*, *In Public*, and *In General*.
3. In the section about table don'ts, the book offers the following warning: Don't bend over your plate, or drop your head to get each mouthful.
4. The table advice continues by adding, Don't bite your bread. Break it off.
5. This book offers particularly comforting advice about conducting oneself in public.
6. For instance, it states, Don't brush against people, or elbow people, or in any way show disregard for others.
7. When meeting others on the street, the book advises, Don't be in a haste to introduce. Be sure that it is mutually desired before presenting one person to another.
8. In the section titled *In General*, there are more tips about how to get along in society, such as Don't underrate everything that others do, and overstate your own doings.
9. The *Don't* book has this to say about books, whether borrowed or owned: Read them, but treat them as friends that must not be abused.
10. And one can never take the following warning too much to heart: Don't make yourself in any particular way a nuisance to your neighbors or your family.

### Exercise 3

---

1. Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening is a poem by Robert Frost.
2. Once you finish your responses, the teacher said, bring your test papers up to my desk.
3. I subscribe to several periodicals, including Time and U.S. News & World Report.
4. Our country is the world, William Lloyd Garrison believed, our countrymen are all mankind.
5. Do you know, my teacher asked, that there are only three ways to end a sentence?
6. Edward Young warned young people to Be wise with speed. A fool at forty is a fool indeed.
7. In Shakespeare's play Romeo and Juliet, Mercutio accidentally gets stabbed and shouts, A plague on both your houses!
8. There is no such thing as a moral or an immoral book, Oscar Wilde writes in his novel The Picture of Dorian Gray; Books are either well written, or badly written.
9. Molière felt that One should eat to live, and not live to eat.
10. Did you say, I'm sleepy or I'm beeping?

### Exercise 4

---

1. Women's Wit and Wisdom is the title of a book I found in the library.
2. The book includes many great insights that were written or spoken by women throughout history.
3. England's Queen Elizabeth I noted in the sixteenth century that A clear and innocent conscience fears nothing.
4. Nothing is so good as it seems beforehand, observed George Eliot, a female author whose real name was Mary Ann Evans.
5. Some of the women's quotations are funny; Alice Roosevelt Longworth, for instance, said, If you don't have anything good to say about anyone, come and sit by me.

6. If life is a bowl of cherries, asked Erma Bombeck, what am I doing in the pits?
7. Some of the quotations are serious, such as Gloria Steinem's statement, The future depends on what each of us does every day.
8. Maya Lin, the woman who designed Washington D.C.'s Vietnam Veterans Memorial, reminded us that, as she put it, War is not just a victory or a loss. . . . People die.
9. Emily Dickinson had this to say about truth: Truth is such a rare thing, it is delightful to tell it.
10. Finally, columnist Ann Landers advised one of her readers that The naked truth is always better than the best-dressed lie.

### Exercise 5

---

1. In his book *Who's Buried in Grant's Tomb? A Tour of Presidential Gravesites*, Brian Lamb records the final words of American presidents who have passed away.
2. Some of their goodbyes were directed at their loved ones; for example, President Zachary Taylor told those around him, I regret nothing, but I am sorry that I am about to leave my friends.
3. Other presidents, such as William Henry Harrison, who died after only one month in office, addressed more political concerns; Harrison said, I wish you to understand the true principles of the government. I wish them carried out. I ask for nothing more.
4. John Tyler became president due to Harrison's sudden death; Tyler served his term, lived to be seventy-one, and said, Perhaps it is best when his time came.
5. At the age of eighty-three, Thomas Jefferson fought to live long enough to see the fiftieth anniversary of America's independence; on that day in 1826, Jefferson was one of only three (out of fifty-six) signers of the Declaration of Independence still living, and he asked repeatedly before he died, Is it the fourth?
6. John Adams, one of the other three remaining signers, died later the same day—July 4, 1826—and his last words ironically were Thomas Jefferson still survives.

7. The third president to die on the Fourth of July (1831) was James Monroe; while he was president, people within the government got along so well that his time in office was known as the era of good feelings.
8. Doctors attempted to help James Madison live until the Fourth of July, but he put off their assistance; on June 26, 1836, when a member of his family became alarmed at his condition, Madison comforted her by saying, Nothing more than a change of mind, my dear, and he passed away.
9. Grover Cleveland, who had suffered from many physical problems, was uneasy at his death; before losing consciousness, he said, I have tried so hard to do right.
10. Finally, George Washington, our first president, also suffered greatly but faced death bravely; I die hard, he told the people by his bedside, but I am not afraid to go. 'Tis well.

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

Correctly punctuate quotations and titles in the following paragraph by adding quotation marks or underlining (*italics*).

We were allowed to choose a book to review in our journals last week. The teacher specified that it should be a short nonfiction book about something of interest to us. I found a great book to review. It's called *Tattoo: Secrets of a Strange Art*. Albert Parry breaks the contents down into chapters about tattoo legends, techniques, and purposes. A few of the chapter titles are *The Art and Its Masters*, *The Circus*, *Identification*, and *Removal*. The book also includes illustrations and photographs of tattoo designs and tattooed people and animals throughout history, including *Miss Stella: The Tattooed Lady*, *The Famous Tattooed Cow*, and *Georgius Constantine*. Parry describes Constantine's tattoos in the following way: the most complete, elaborate, and artistic tattooing ever witnessed in America or Europe. Parry continues, There was almost no part of his body, not a quarter-inch

of the skin, free from designs. Needless to say, since I love tattoos, I loved Parry's book about them.

## SENTENCE WRITING

Write ten sentences that list and discuss your favorite songs, TV shows, characters' expressions, movies, books, and so on. Be sure to punctuate quotations and titles correctly. Refer to the rules at the beginning of this section if necessary. Keep the results in your sentence writing folder.

## Capital Letters

### 1. Capitalize the first word of every sentence.

Peaches taste best when they are cold.

A piece of fruit is an amazing object.

### 2. Capitalize the first word of every direct quotation.

She said, “You’ve never worked so hard before.”

“You have finished most of your homework,” she said, “but you still have a lot to do.” (The *but* is not capitalized because it does not begin a new sentence.)

“I love my speech class,” she said. “Maybe I’ll change my major.” (*Maybe* is capitalized because it begins a new sentence.)

### 3. Capitalize the first, last, and every important word in a title. Don’t capitalize prepositions (such as *in*, *of*, *at*, *with*), short connecting words, the *to* in front of a verb, or *a*, *an*, or *the*. See p. 235 for more about titles.

I saw a copy of Darwin’s *The Origin of Species* at a yard sale.

The class enjoyed the essay “How to Write a Rotten Poem with Almost No Effort.”

*Shakespeare in Love* is a film based on Shakespeare’s writing of the play *Romeo and Juliet*.

### 4. Capitalize specific names of people, places, languages, races, and nationalities.

English

China

Cesar Chavez

Ireland

Spanish

Japanese

Ryan White

Philadelphia

Main Street

### 5. Capitalize names of months, days of the week, and special days, but not the seasons.

March

Fourth of July

spring

Tuesday

Earth Day

winter

Valentine’s Day

Labor Day

fall

**6. Capitalize a title of relationship if it takes the place of the person's name. If *my* (or *your*, *her*, *his*, *our*, *their*) is in front of the word, a capital is not used.**

I think Mom wrote to him.

*but* I think my mom wrote to him.

We visited Aunt Sophie.

*but* We visited our aunt.

They spoke with Grandpa.

*but* They spoke with their grandpa.

**7. Capitalize names of particular people or things, but not general terms.**

I admire Professor Washborne.

*but* I admire my professor.

We saw the famous Potomac River.

*but* We saw the famous river.

Are you from the South?

*but* Is your house south of the mountains?

I will take Philosophy 4 and English 100.

*but* I will take philosophy and English.

She graduated from Sutter High School.

*but* She graduated from high school.

They live at 119 Forest St.

*but* They live on a beautiful street.

We enjoyed the Monterey Bay Aquarium.

*but* We enjoyed the aquarium.

## EXERCISES

Add all of the necessary capital letters to the sentences that follow.

### Exercise 1

---

1. i have always wanted to learn another language besides english.
2. recently, i have been watching a lot of films from india.
3. some people call them "bollywood movies."
4. whatever they are called, i love to watch them.
5. one part of these movies that i love is their language: hindi.
6. i have to use english subtitles to understand the dialogue most of the time.
7. but sometimes i can catch what's happening without the subtitles.

8. because of my intense interest in hindi-language films, i plan to take a hindi class.
9. i have already bought a book that explains the devanagari writing system.
10. now i will enroll in a class and learn hindi as a second language.

## Exercise 2

---

1. when people think of jazz, they think of *down beat* magazine.
2. *down beat's* motto may be "jazz, blues & beyond," but some people think that the magazine has gone too far "beyond" by including two guitarists in the *down beat* hall of fame.
3. the two musicians in question are jimi hendrix and frank zappa.
4. jimi hendrix was inducted into the hall of fame in 1970.
5. *down beat* added frank zappa to the list in 1994.
6. since then, readers and editors have been debating whether hendrix and zappa belong in the same group as duke ellington, john coltrane, and miles davis.
7. those who play jazz guitar have some of the strongest opinions on the subject.
8. russell malone, mark elf, and john abercrombie all agree that hendrix and zappa were great guitarists but not jazz guitarists.
9. others like steve tibbetts and bill frisell don't have any problem putting hendrix on the list, but tibbetts isn't so sure about including zappa.
10. it will be interesting to see who *down beat's* future inductees will be.

Source: *Down Beat*, July 1999

## Exercise 3

---

1. i grew up watching *it's a wonderful life* once a year on tv in the winter.
2. that was before the colorized version and before every station started showing it fifteen times a week throughout the months of november and december.

3. i especially remember enjoying that holiday classic with my mother and brothers when we lived on seventh avenue.
4. "hurry up!" mom would yell, "you're going to miss the beginning!"
5. my favorite part has always been when jimmy stewart's character, george bailey, uses his own money to help the people of bedford falls and to save his father's building and loan.
6. george's disappointment turns to happiness after he and donna reed's character, mary, move into the abandoned house on their honeymoon.
7. of course, mean old mr. potter takes advantage of uncle billy's carelessness at the bank, and that starts george's breakdown.
8. in his despair, george places the petals of his daughter zuzu's flower in his pocket, leaves his house, and wants to commit suicide.
9. luckily, all of george's good deeds have added up over the years, and he is given a chance to see that thanks to a character named clarence.
10. when george feels zuzu's petals in his pocket, he knows that he's really made it home again, and the people of bedford falls come to help him.

#### Exercise 4

---

1. most people don't know the name elzie crisler segar.
2. segar was the creator of the comic character popeye.
3. segar based popeye and many of his fellow characters on residents of the town of chester, illinois, where segar was born.
4. popeye's inspiration was a chester bartender named frank "rocky" fiegel.
5. fiegel was a brawler by nature and might have even been a sailor at some point.
6. segar learned how to draw by taking a correspondence course.
7. one of segar's bosses at a chester movie house, j. william schuchert, was the prototype for wimpy.
8. segar introduced olive oyl's character in his *thimble theater* comic strip.
9. olive was based on a chester store owner, dora paskel.

10. the town of chester celebrates the work of elzie crisler segar with a yearly popeye picnic, the popeye museum, a popeye statue, and segar memorial park.

Source: *Biography*, November 2003

## Exercise 5

---

1. *the new yorker* magazine has a cartoon contest every week.
2. at the back of each issue, there is a page devoted to the contest.
3. the heading at the top of the page reads "cartoon caption contest."
4. below the heading is a brief description of the rules involved in the contest.
5. it begins, "each week, we provide a cartoon in need of a caption."
6. it continues, "you, the reader, submit a caption, we choose three finalists, and you vote for your favorite."
7. then it specifies the deadline for that week's submissions.
8. at the bottom of the page are three cartoons: one is titled "the winning caption"; the second lists "the finalists," and the third shows "this week's contest."
9. winners of the caption contest are named in the magazine, and they receive a signed print of the cartoon that they helped to create.
10. any u.s. resident who is eighteen or over can enter the contest or vote.

## REVIEW OF PUNCTUATION AND CAPITAL LETTERS

Punctuate these sentences. They include all the rules for punctuation and capitalization you have learned. Compare your answers carefully with those at the back of the book. Sentences may require several pieces of punctuation or capital letters.

1. on august 4 1961 president barack h obama was born in hawaii
2. have you read all three books in the twilight series
3. mina and tracy drove all the way from niagara falls to new york city
4. how many semesters of chinese have you taken my counselor asked
5. the pyramids of giza are among the most famous manmade objects in the world
6. congratulations ms roberts on your teacher-of-the-year award you deserve it
7. the person who holds on to that car without letting go will win it
8. i am working toward a degree in engineering and my brother is in the nursing program
9. due to the low number of completed loan applications in the spring the financial aid office has extended its summer deadline
10. the foreign film club needs people to pass out flyers should we volunteer
11. samantha needs a new smart phone because the phone she has now is really dumb
12. stopping by woods on a snowy evening is a famous poem by robert frost
13. whenever eric gets a traffic ticket he gets so nervous that he starts to shake all over
14. the happy customer stood in front of the cash register and yelled the same thing over and over i won a thousand dollars i cant believe it
15. my chinese teacher helps us remember the look of certain written characters by posing like them for example she stands with her feet firm and her arms stretched wide to represent the character that means strong

## COMPREHENSIVE TEST

In these sentences, you'll find all the errors that have been discussed in the entire text. Try to name the error in the blank before each sentence, and then correct the error if you can. You may find any of the following errors:

<b>adj</b>	incorrect adjective
<b>adv</b>	incorrect adverb
<b>apos</b>	apostrophe
<b>awk</b>	awkward phrasing
<b>c</b>	comma needed
<b>cap</b>	capitalization
<b>cliché</b>	overused expression
<b>cs</b>	comma splice
<b>dm</b>	dangling modifier
<b>frag</b>	fragment
<b>mm</b>	misplaced modifier
<b>p</b>	punctuation
<b>pro</b>	incorrect pronoun
<b>pro agr</b>	pronoun agreement
<b>pro ref</b>	pronoun reference
<b>ro</b>	run-on sentence
<b>shift</b>	shift in time or person
<b>sp</b>	misspelled word
<b>s-v agr</b>	subject-verb agreement
<b>wordy</b>	wordiness
<b>ww</b>	wrong word
<b>//</b>	not parallel

A perfect—or almost perfect—score will mean you've mastered the first part of the text.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Why do childrens' movies have better stories than the ones their parents go to see?

2. \_\_\_\_\_ I had to take a powerful antibiotic, and I'm still feeling its side effects.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ I wonder how I can get an earlier registration date?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The fencing coach sent a special certificate to my opponent and I.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ "Welcome," the teacher said to all of us, "are we ready to begin."
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Depending of the price of gasoline at the time I either ride my bike or drive to school.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Her hands were as cold as ice when she left the skating rink.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Family reunions always seem like a good idea but they never live up to people's expectations.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ When she looked into the bottom of her backpack, she found out that there was a big hole in it.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ We volunteered to read books to kids at the library, we felt fantastic afterward.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ You missed some real important notes when you were absent.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Hopping on one foot, my heel broke off my shoe during the parade.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ We ordered rice and beans, but it tasted like rice pudding.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Everyone was allowed to bring one of their parents.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The librarian showed us the stacks, the computer area, and the place where the copiers were located.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ I felt badly when my sister didn't get a promotion.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ Each of the math tutors have a different area of expertise.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ The critique of our sculpture projects took much longer then I expected.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ An error occurring while I uploaded my video to YouTube.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ Their going to pack their boxes on Wednesday and move them on Friday.

## PART 4

---

# Writing

Aside from the basics of word choice, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation, what else do you need to understand to write better? Just as sentences are built according to accepted patterns, so are other “structures” of English—paragraphs and essays, for example.

Think of writing as including levels of structures, beginning small with words connecting to form phrases, clauses, and sentences. Then sentences connect to form paragraphs and essays. Each level has its own set of “blueprints.” To communicate clearly in writing, words must be chosen and spelled correctly. Sentences must have a subject, a verb, and a complete thought. Paragraphs must be indented and should contain a main idea supported with sufficient detail. Essays explore a valuable topic in several coherent paragraphs, usually including an introduction, a body, and a conclusion.

Not everyone approaches writing as structure, however. It is possible to write better without thinking about structure at all. A good place to start might be to write what you care about and to care about what you write. You can make an amazing amount of progress by simply being *genuine*, being who you are naturally. No one has to tell you to be yourself when you speak, but you might need encouragement to be yourself in your writing.

Writing is almost never done without a reason. The reason may come from an experience, such as receiving an unfair parking ticket, or from a requirement in a class. And when you are asked to write, you often receive guidance in the form of an assignment: tell a story, prove a point, paint a picture with words, summarize a reading, compare two subjects, share what you know about something, explain why you agree with or disagree with a statement or an idea.

Learning to write well is important, one of the most important things you will do in your education. Confidence is the key. The Writing sections will help you build confidence, whether you are expressing your own ideas or summarizing and responding to the ideas of others. Like the Sentence Structure sections, the Writing sections are best taken in order. However, each one discusses an aspect of writing that you can review on its own at any time.

## What Is the Least You Should Know about Writing?

“Unlike medicine or the other sciences,” William Zinsser points out, “writing has no new discoveries to spring on us. We’re in no danger of reading in our morning newspaper that a breakthrough has been made in how to write [clearly]. . . . We may be given new technologies like the word processor to ease the burdens of composition, but on the whole we know what we need to know.”

One thing that’s certain is that you learn to write by *writing*—not by reading long discussions about writing. Therefore, the explanations and instructions in these sections are as brief as they can be, followed by samples from student and professional writers.

Understanding the basic structures and learning the essential skills covered in these sections will help you become a better writer.

### BASIC STRUCTURES

- I. The Paragraph
- II. The Essay

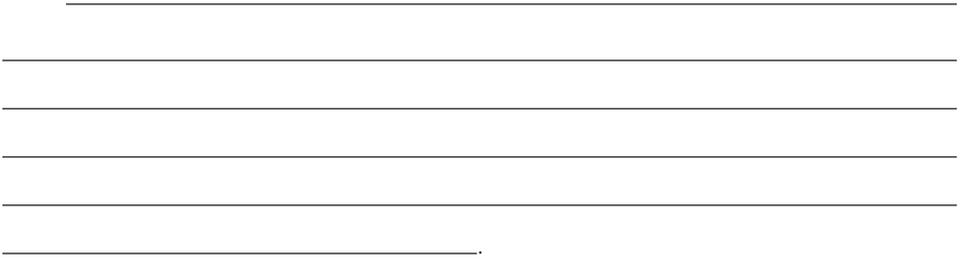
### WRITING SKILLS

- III. Writing in Your Own Voice
- IV. Finding a Topic
- V. Organizing Ideas
- VI. Supporting with Details
- VII. Revising Your Papers
- VIII. Presenting Your Work
- IX. Writing an Argument
- X. Writing Summaries

# Basic Structures

## I. THE PARAGRAPH

A paragraph is unlike any other structure in English. Visually, it has its own profile: the first line is indented about five spaces, and sentences continue to fill the space between both margins until the paragraph ends (which may be in the middle of the line):



As a beginning writer, you may forget to indent your paragraphs, or you may break off in the middle of a line within a paragraph, especially when writing in class. You must remember to indent whenever you begin a new paragraph and fill the space between the margins until it ends. (Note: In business writing, paragraphs are not indented but double-spaced in between.)

### Defining a Paragraph

A typical paragraph develops one idea, usually phrased in a topic sentence from which all the other sentences in the paragraph radiate. The topic sentence does not need to begin the paragraph, but it most often does, and the other sentences support it with specific details. (For more on topic sentences and organizing paragraphs, see p. 225.) Paragraphs usually contain several sentences, though no set number is required. A paragraph can stand alone, but more commonly paragraphs are part of a larger composition, an essay. There are different kinds of paragraphs, based on the jobs they do.

### Types of Paragraphs

#### SAMPLE PARAGRAPHS IN AN ESSAY

**Introductory paragraphs** begin essays. They provide background information about the essay's topic and usually include the thesis statement or main idea of the essay. (See p. 223 for information on how to write a thesis statement.) Here is the introductory paragraph of a student essay entitled "A Bit of Bad Luck":

It's 9:45, and I'm panicking. As a student, I live a life that is almost free of misfortunes. I don't even think about bad luck. Just last week I won forty dollars in the lottery and two tickets to a concert from a radio station. So this

in-class writing assignment to tell about an experience I've had with bad luck has caught me completely off guard. I don't know what to write!

In this opening paragraph, the student introduces the main idea—"I don't even think about bad luck"—and gives background information about the in-class writing assignment that has forced her to think about it.

**Body paragraphs** are those in the middle of essays. Each body paragraph contains a topic sentence and presents detailed information about one subtopic, stage, or idea that relates directly to the essay's thesis. (See p. 225 for more information on organizing body paragraphs.) Here are the body paragraphs of the same essay:

I try to think of what I would call an unlucky moment. At about 9:08, we finish discussing the prompt for the assignment. "Okay," I say to myself, "this shouldn't be a problem. All I have to do is come up with a topic . . . a topic." I can feel the class ease into deep thought as I sit and scratch my head for inspiration. By 9:15, pens are flaring all over the room. The grey shirt in front of me shifts in his chair. The guy to my left has at least a paragraph already in front of him. And the girls in front of him scribble away as if they were born to write.

At 9:37, I realize that I will soon run out of time. The minutes pass like seconds, and I find myself watching the class and wondering, "What's wrong with me?" while everyone else is making it look so easy. I'm thinking of high school, boyfriends, this morning's breakfast, and then I realize what is getting me all worked up—not knowing what to write. This has never happened to me before.

Now I glance at my teacher, and even she's writing. How hard could it be to glide ink across a white open field? Then she gets up and tells us she'll be right back. Jennifer, to my right in blue stripes, looks at me and mouths, "Are you stuck?" I nod and add, "This has never happened to me before," cursing my bad luck. Finally, I decide to write the story of the last forty-five minutes, and it rushes easily from pen to paper.

Notice that each of the three body paragraphs discusses a single stage of her experience with bad luck in the form of writer's block.

**Concluding paragraphs** are the final paragraphs in essays. They bring the discussion to a close and share the writer's final thoughts on the subject. (See p. 224 for more about concluding paragraphs.) Here is the conclusion of the sample essay:

It's about 10:05. Class is over; the teacher is waiting, and I'm still writing. Jennifer has gone, and the white shirt to my left is on his way out. Someone is rustling papers not caring who's around him. As I turn in my essay, I am disappointed in myself, knowing I could have done more. I will keep thinking about it when I get home. But in this misfortune, I still feel quite lucky knowing that I discovered my bit of bad luck, and the results could have been much, much worse.

In this concluding paragraph, the student finishes her story and shares her unwavering optimism even after her “bit of bad luck.”

### SAMPLE OF A PARAGRAPH ALONE

**Single-paragraph writing assignments** may be given in class or as homework. They test your understanding of the unique structure of a paragraph. They may ask you to answer a single question, perhaps following a reading, or to provide details about a limited topic. Look at this student paragraph, the result of a homework assignment asking students to report on a technological development in the news:

Pet owners in the United States can take advantage of a new gadget: washing machines for pets. These self-service machines are available at laundromat-style locations especially designed for animals. A dog or a cat that needs a bath can enter one of these machines dirty and emerge from it clean and dry. Once the animal is inside the device, nozzles spray water and mild natural shampoo from all directions to clean the animal’s fur. The drying cycle sends gentle gusts of air to dry and massage the pet’s fur. The whole process takes about thirty minutes, and most animals seem to enjoy it. Pet washing machines were invented in Spain and used throughout Europe before arriving in America. They seem to be a good idea, as long as they keep the pets safe and happy.

These shorter writing assignments help students practice presenting information within the limited structure of a paragraph.

The assignments in the upcoming Writing Skills section will sometimes ask you to write paragraphs. Remember that you may review the previous pages as often as you wish until you understand the unique structure of the paragraph.

## II. THE ESSAY

Like the paragraph, an essay has its own profile, usually including a title and several paragraphs.

Title

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



## Defining an Essay

There is no such thing as a typical essay. Essays may be serious or humorous, but the best of them present thought-provoking information or opinions. Try looking up the word *essay* in a dictionary right now. Some words used to define an essay might need to be explained themselves:

An essay is *prose* (meaning it is written in the ordinary language of sentences and paragraphs).

An essay is *nonfiction* (meaning it deals with real people, factual information, actual opinions and events).

An essay is a *composition* (meaning it is created in parts that make up the whole, several paragraphs that explore a single topic or issue).

An essay is *personal* (meaning it shares the writer's unique perspective, even if only in the choice of topic, method of analysis, and details).

An essay is *analytical* and *instructive* (meaning it examines the workings of a subject and shares the results with the reader).

An essay may be *argumentative* (meaning it tries to convince the reader to accept an opinion or take action).

## A SAMPLE ESSAY

For an example of a piece of writing that fits the above definition, read the following essay, in which professional writer Joanne Kaufman explains how hard it is to share her most valuable possessions—her *books*.

### Neither a Borrower nor a Lender Be

If you need a place to stay, come on by; the pullout couch is yours. The Subaru? Keys are under the sun visor. The shirt off my back? Let me iron it first. One of my four copies of *Sense and Sensibility*? Park yourself in the wing chair and read away. But those books—and every other volume in the joint—stay on the premises. And don't make me call security.

It used to be that if I loved a particular book, I wanted the people I cared about to care about it too. In fact, I used certain books as a litmus test. Could I truly have a deep friendship or a serious romance with someone who couldn't get through *Jane Eyre*? But I enacted a policy change after lending a number of books,

some out of print, and never seeing them again. Friends who wouldn't dream of borrowing a lawn mower or any item of clothing without promptly returning it seem to assume that a book comes with a long lease. The assumption, no doubt, is that if I'm lending it, I've already read it and won't have any immediate need for it. At times, I've imagined posting a most-wanted list of sticky-fingered readers on the bulletin board of my local bookstore. Public enemy number one: the woman who borrowed my hardcover copy of a favorite biography, and who, after more than a year—and considerable hectoring—mailed back the book, postage-due, *in paperback*.

Now, I know what you may be thinking: Just when do I honestly think I'm going to reread those gossipy Hollywood memoirs or those 18th-century British masterpieces I've collected for a rainy day? But I can't shake the belief that just as soon as I stamp their exit visa, I'll suddenly decide I want them. Now. Further, I do read cherished sections of cherished books over and over again—like the moment Anne of Green Gables realizes life would be utterly meaningless without Gilbert Blythe, or when Elizabeth Bennett comes to the same conclusion at the end of *Pride and Prejudice*. So I want to know those volumes are within easy reach.

I'm aware that, by coldly taking this stance, I'm blowing my reputation as a generous sort. But better to be viewed as selfish than as someone who learns nothing from experience. In any case, I am not a hypocrite: I wouldn't dream of borrowing books. It's like taking care of someone else's kids: The responsibility is too overwhelming.

Essayist Anne Fadiman—whose collection, *Ex Libris*, is staying on my shelf—notes, “The longer you own a book, the more it differs from other copies.” Certain beloved texts of my childhood—I'm thinking of *A Little Princess* and *Daddy*

*Long Legs*—are liberally annotated with mustard and chocolate milk; markers of those special occasions when I was permitted to read at the dinner table. These books, some immaculate in their dust jackets, others broken-spined, are part of my personal landscape. They say that this place is my home in much the same way a particular arrangement of pots and pans and spices might say it about a cook.

Literature is full of characters moved by desperation to scheme and cheat and lie. I've learned from them. Last week, when someone wanted to borrow an early Alison Lurie novel, I said I was reading it. When it comes up again, I'll say I've lent it out. Then I'll mention a place that does this sort of thing quite often: the public library.

*Source: Good Housekeeping*, Jan. 2004. Copyright 2004 by Joanne Kaufman. Reprinted with permission of the author.

Now that you have learned more about the basic structures of the paragraph and the essay, you are ready to practice the skills necessary to write them.

# Writing Skills

## III. WRITING IN YOUR OWN VOICE

All writing “speaks” on paper. And the person “listening” is the reader. Some beginning writers forget that writing and reading are two-way methods of communication, just like spoken conversations between two people. When you write, your reader “hears” you; when you read, you also listen.

When speaking, you express a personality in your choice of phrases, your movements, your tone of voice. Family and friends probably recognize your voice messages on their answering machines without your having to identify yourself. Would they also be able to recognize your writing? They would if you extended your “voice” into your writing.

Writing should not sound like talking, necessarily, but it should have a *personality* that comes from the way you decide to approach a topic, to develop it with details, to say it your way.

The beginning of this book discusses the difference between spoken English, which follows the looser patterns of *speaking*, and Standard Written English, which follows accepted patterns of writing. Don't think that the only way to add “voice” to your writing is to use the patterns of spoken English. Remember that Standard Written English does not have to be dull or sound academic. Look at this example of Standard Written English that has a distinct voice, from the book *100 Birds and How They Got Their Names* by Diana Wells:

The roadrunner, as well as being a cartoon character, is a type of cuckoo. Less surprisingly, roadrunners avoid flying, preferring to run (along roads!). They can reach speeds of fifteen miles per hour.

Roadrunners are about two feet in length, with long tails and zygodactyl feet, like other cuckoos. This means that two toes point forward and two back, making it hard to tell from their tracks whether they were going forward or backward. Pueblo Indians used to surround the houses of their dead with a scratched pattern of roadrunner tracks, to confuse any evil spirits that might be lurking around.

Wells' description of the roadrunner illustrates Standard Written English at its best—from its solid sentence structures to its precise use of words. But more importantly, Wells' clear voice speaks to us and informs us about the impact this bird has had on human lives.

You can involve your reader, too, by writing in your own voice. Here is an example of a student response to a brief assignment to write about a memorable school experience.

I remember in high school, our life skills teacher had us take a test to evaluate our learning abilities. My test results said that I was a “kinesthetic learner.” That was supposed to mean that I learned best by seeing and doing.

After thinking about the results, I realized that I have always been interested in how things work. I used to open up all of the electronic or mechanical things I was given—from clocks to toys—to see what made them “tick.” When I was ten, my brother and I constructed a tree house out of scrap wood we gathered from around our neighborhood. Surprisingly enough, that tree house still stands today. There are also many things that I have just figured out on my own over the years. Many people have a hard time with even simple things, such as changing their car’s oil or putting on a spare tire. I have never taken an auto-repair class, yet I can change my car’s brakes, oil, alternator, starter, and fuel filter—just to name a few. I guess that test back in high school helped me discover what makes me “tick,” too.

Notice that both the professional and the student writers tell stories (narration) and paint pictures (description) in the sample paragraphs. Narration and description require practice, but once you master them, you will gain a stronger voice and will be able to add interest and clarity to even the most challenging academic writing assignments.

### **Narration**

Narrative writing tells the reader a story, and since most of us like to tell stories, it is a good place to begin writing in your own voice. An effective narration allows readers to experience an event with the writer. Since we all see the world differently and feel unique emotions, the purpose of narration is to take readers with us through an experience. As a result, the writer gains a better understanding of what happened, and readers get to live other lives momentarily. Listen to the “voice” of this student writer sharing the story of his graduation from high school:

#### A Glorious Day

Graduation was the day I was looking forward to the most. I was turning 18, and it was the last day I would be able to call myself a high school student. During the week-long preparation, everyone had their umbrellas out to block the dreaded sun. We sat and walked in lines for hours as the sweat ran like the Niagara Falls, and people fanned themselves like there was no tomorrow. When we were set free each day, everyone made an “Oh, my gosh” or “Thank god” comment.

I am sure all my classmates felt scared about the future. That we would begin our lives as adults is what frightened most of us. I ironed my shirt, adjusted my tie, put on my slacks and dress shoes. I felt ready. I drove up to the school and walked into the music room to join my classmates. Everyone was happy, and the flash of their cameras blinded me as I walked through to find my friends. I looked at one of my friends who was biting his nails, and I started to wonder if I was really ready. We all got into alphabetical order and were searched for cell phones and balloons.

As we started walking, I felt that each step was leading to a whole new world. I saw everyone smiling and began to feel happy for all of us. I saw green and gold shining in everyone's eyes from the reflection of our caps and gowns. When we reached the field, something hit me hard inside. This was the school I had gone to for four years, and now it's a place I must leave behind for the rest of my life. We took our seats, whipped out our programs, and started fanning again. Everyone looked sweaty and sticky, but it didn't matter. The speeches were given, and our names were pronounced. As students grabbed their diplomas one by one, I noticed they felt free. Some threw their arms in the air as if they were ready to fly; others just looked relieved.

The diploma acted like a "Get out of Jail Free" card from Monopoly. Max, our ASB president, gave his last speech. We all turned our tassels to the right side and threw our caps into the air. It was over. I looked up and felt everything move in slow motion. It was like in the movies. I started to think about everything I had done in high school—the football, the dances, and the friends that had an impact on my life.

It felt too fast, like I blinked and it was over. All the friends and families in the stands bull-rushed the field, searching for their child. Hugs and gifts were given as the cameras kept flashing. The look on every

parent's face was priceless, a face we would never see again. They all looked proud and saw their children differently. Not as girls and boys, but as men and women. After everything ended, I stood on the field, stared at the lights, and closed my eyes. I enjoyed my last few moments, took a deep breath, and drove home with a friend.

"A Glorious Day" by Bryant Ramli. Reprinted by permission of the student.

## Description

Descriptive writing paints word pictures with details that appeal to the reader's five senses—sight, sound, touch, taste, and smell. The writer of description often uses comparisons to help readers picture one thing by imagining something else. In the following paragraph, a student uses vivid details to bring the place she loves best to life:

Fort Baker is located across the bay from San Francisco, almost under the Golden Gate Bridge. When I lived there as a child, nature was all I saw. Deer came onto our porch and nibbled the plants; raccoons dumped the trash cans over; skunks sprayed my brother because he poked them with a stick, and little field mice jumped out of the bread drawer at my sister when she opened it. Behind the house was a small forest of strong green trees; the dirt actually felt soft, and tall grassy plants with bright yellow flowers grew all around. I don't know the plants' real name, but my friend and I called it "sour grass." When we chewed the stems, we got a mouth full of sour juice that made our faces crinkle and our eyes water.

Here is another example of a descriptive paragraph. In it, the student describes her car door's remote control device by comparing it to a robot. The robot comparison helps her incorporate vivid details in order to bring the description to life.

### My Robot

My car door's remote control looks like a small robot's head. The front of it resembles a human face to me. It has two droopy eyes, a nose, and a mouth—eyes that cannot see, a nose that cannot smell, and a mouth that cannot open. It is wrapped in old shiny clear tape because its connector for a key ring is broken. The tape covers its face like an uncomfortable mask and secures the "robot" to a flat piece of leather, shaped like a bottle, which has a small chain attached to it. The chain holds my little robot like a prisoner on my key ring. My robot has a mind of its own. Like a small child, it can be capricious. Sometimes it does what I want it to do, but other times it does what it wants to do. Its brain shows that it's working by blinking a red light on its forehead. And even though my little robot looks old and tired, it usually works when I need it the most.

You may have noticed that many of the examples in this section use both narration and description. In fact, most effective writing—even a good résumé or biology lab report—calls for clear storytelling and vivid word pictures to engage the reader.

## Writing Assignments

The following two assignments will help you develop your voice as a writer. For now, don't worry about topic sentences or thesis statements or any of the things we'll consider later. Narration and description have their own logical structures. A story has a beginning, a middle, and an end. And we describe things from top to bottom, side to side, and so on.

### Assignment 1

#### **NARRATION: FAMOUS SAYINGS**

The following is a list of well-known expressions. No doubt you have had an experience that proves at least one of these to be true. Write a short essay that tells a story from your own life that relates to one of these sayings. (See if you can tell which of the sayings fit the experiences narrated in the essays “Neither a Borrower nor a Lender Be” on p. 212 and “A Glorious Day” on p. 216.) You might want to identify the expression you have chosen in your introductory paragraph. Then tell the beginning, middle, and end of the story. Be sure to use vivid details to bring the story to life. Finish with a brief concluding paragraph in which you share your final thoughts on the experience.

Life is what happens when you're busy making other plans.

Experience is the best teacher.

No good deed goes unpunished.

Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

Time heals all wounds.

### Assignment 2

#### **DESCRIPTION: A VALUABLE OBJECT**

Describe an object that means a lot to you. It could be a gift that you received, an object you purchased for yourself, an heirloom in your family, a memento from your childhood, or just something you carry around with you every day. Your goal is to make the reader visualize the object. Try to use details and comparisons that appeal to the reader's senses in some way. Look back at the examples for inspiration. Be sure the reader knows—from your choice of details—what the object means to you.

## IV. FINDING A TOPIC

You will most often be given a topic to write about; however, when the assignment of a paper calls for you to choose your own topic without any further assistance, try to go immediately to your interests.

### Look to Your Interests

If the topic of your paper is something you know about and—more important—something you *care* about, then the whole process of writing will be smoother and more enjoyable for you. If you ski, if you are a musician, or even if you just enjoy watching a lot of television, bring that knowledge and enthusiasm into your papers.

Take a moment to think about and jot down a few of your interests now (no matter how unrelated to school they may seem), and then save the list for use later when deciding what to write about. One student's list of interests might look like this:

- buying and selling on eBay
- playing games with friends
- surfing in summer
- collecting baseball cards

Another student's list might be very different:

- playing the violin
- going to concerts
- watching “Bollywood” movies
- drawing pictures of my friends

While still another student might list the following interests:

- going to the horse races
- reading for my book club
- traveling in the summer
- buying lottery tickets

These students have listed several worthy topics for papers. And because they are personal interests, the students have the details needed to support them. With a general topic to start with, you can use several ways to gather the details you will need to support it in a paragraph or an essay.

### Focused Free Writing (or Brainstorming)

Free writing is a good way to begin. When you are assigned a paper, try writing for ten minutes by putting down all your thoughts on one subject—drawing pictures of my friends, for example. Don't stop to think about organization, sentence structures, capitalization, or spelling—just let details flow onto the page. Free writing will help you see what material you have and will help you figure out what aspects of the subject to write about.

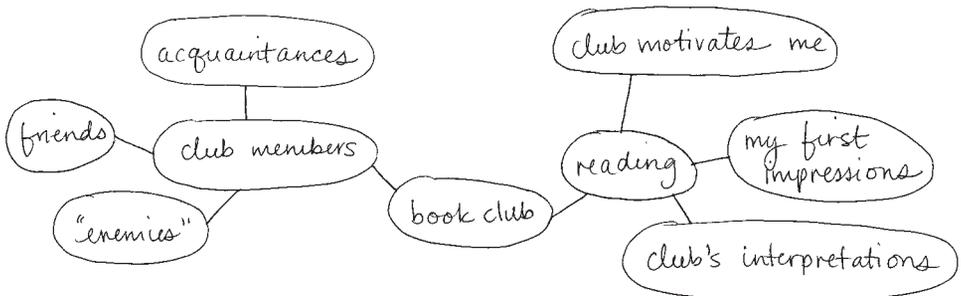
Here is an example:

I like to draw pictures of my friends but sometimes they don't like it when I draw them. The nose is too big they think or the hair isn't just right. Once in a while I get it perfect, but not that often. I like to style my drawings like cartoons kind of. It's almost like you'll see little balloons like in a cartoon strip with little sayings in them. I'm not a big talker myself, so I can express myself with my friends thru my drawings of them. Again, some of them like it and some of them don't.

Now the result of this free writing session is certainly not ready to be typed and turned in as a paragraph. But what did become clear in it was that the student could probably compare the two types of friends—those who like to be drawn and those who don't.

### Clustering

Clustering is another way of putting ideas on paper before you begin to write an actual draft. A cluster is more visual than free writing. You could cluster the topic of "book clubs," for instance, by putting it in a circle in the center of a piece of paper and then drawing lines to new circles as ideas or details occur to you. The idea is to free your mind from the limits of sentences and paragraphs to generate pure details and ideas. When you are finished clustering, you can see where you want to go with a topic.



This cluster shows that the student has found two aspects of her book club that she could write about. This cluster might lead to another where the student chooses one subcategory—club members, for instance—and thinks of more details about them.

### Talking with Other Students

It may help to talk to others when deciding on a topic. Many teachers break their classes up into groups at the beginning of an assignment. Talking with other students helps you realize that you see things just a little differently. Value the difference—it will help your written voice that we discussed earlier emerge.

## Assignment 3

---

### LIST YOUR INTERESTS

Make a list of four or five of your own interests. Be sure that they are as specific as the examples listed on p. 220. Keep the list for later assignments.

## Assignment 4

---

### DO SOME FREE WRITING

Choose one of your interests, and do some focused free writing about it. Write for ten minutes with that topic in mind but without stopping. Don't worry about anything such as spelling or sentence structures while you are free writing. The results are meant to help you find out what you have to say about the topic *before* you start to write a paper about it. Save the results for a later assignment.

## Assignment 5

---

### TRY CLUSTERING IDEAS

Choose another of your interests. Put it in the center of a piece of paper, and draw a cluster of details and ideas relating to it following the sample shown earlier. Take the cluster as far as it will go. Then choose one aspect to cluster again on its own. This way you will arrive at specific, interesting details and ideas—not just the first ones that come to mind. Save the results of all your efforts.

## V. ORGANIZING IDEAS

Most important to keep in mind, no matter what you are writing, is the idea you want to get across to the reader. Whether you are writing a paragraph or an essay, you must have in mind a single idea that you want to express. In a paragraph, such an idea is called a *topic sentence*; in an essay it's called a *thesis statement*, but they mean the same thing—an idea you want to get across. We will begin with a discussion of thesis statements.

## Thesis Statements

Let's choose one of the students' interests listed on p. 220 as a general topic. "Buying and selling on eBay" by itself doesn't make any point. What about it? What does it do for you? What point about buying and selling on eBay would you like to present to your reader? You might write a sentence like this:

Buying and selling on eBay is fun and educational.

But this is a vague statement, not focused enough to develop. You might move into more specific territory and write the following sentence:

I have learned about business and geography by buying and selling on eBay.

Now you have said something specific. *When you write in one sentence the point you want to present to your reader, you have written a thesis statement.*

Most writers have a thesis in mind when they begin to write, or the thesis may well evolve as they write. They eventually have in mind an idea they want to present to the reader. They may develop it in various ways, but behind whatever they write is their ruling thought, their reason for writing, their thesis.

For any writing assignment, after you have done some free writing or clustering to explore your topic, the next step is to write a thesis statement. As you write your thesis statement, keep two rules in mind:

1. A thesis statement must be a sentence *with a subject and a verb* (not merely a topic).
2. A thesis statement must be *an idea that you can explain or defend* (not simply a statement of fact).

### Exercise 1

#### TOPIC, FACT, OR THESIS?

Which of the following are merely topics or facts, and which are thesis statements that you could explain or defend? In front of each one that is just a topic or fact, write TOPIC or FACT. In front of each one that could be a thesis statement, write THESIS. Check your answers with those at the back of the book.

1. \_\_\_\_ Gasoline prices are rising again.
2. \_\_\_\_ Some animals seem to be able to predict earthquakes.
3. \_\_\_\_ On July 20, 1969, Neil Armstrong planted an American flag on the moon.
4. \_\_\_\_ After I became a music major, many job opportunities opened up for me.

5. \_\_\_\_ Computer-generated movie characters can affect us in the same ways as “real-life” characters.
6. \_\_\_\_ Voice-recognition software is improving all the time.
7. \_\_\_\_ Home schooling has both advantages and disadvantages.
8. \_\_\_\_ Tiger Woods is an amazing golfer.
9. \_\_\_\_ Traveling to different countries makes people more open-minded.
10. \_\_\_\_ Vegetarians can suffer from health problems related to their diets.

## Assignment 6

---

### WRITE A THESIS STATEMENT

Use your free-writing or clustering results from Assignments 4 and 5 (p. 222) and write at least one thesis statement based on one of your interests. Be sure that the thesis you write is phrased as a complete thought that can be defended or explained in an essay.

### Organizing an Essay

Once you have written a good thesis and explored your topic through discussion with others or by free writing and clustering, you are ready to organize your essay.

First, you need an introductory paragraph. It should catch your reader's interest, provide necessary background information, and either include or suggest your thesis statement. (See p. 208 and p. 216 for two examples of student writers' introductory paragraphs.) In your introductory paragraph, you may also list supporting points, but a more effective way is to let them unfold paragraph by paragraph rather than to give them all away in the beginning of the essay. Even if your supporting points don't appear in your introduction, your reader will easily spot them later if your paper is clearly organized.

Your second paragraph will present your *first* supporting point—everything about it and nothing more.

Your next paragraph will be about your *second* supporting point—all about it and nothing more.

Each additional paragraph will develop *another* supporting point.

Finally, you'll need a concluding paragraph. In a short paper, it isn't necessary to restate your points. Your conclusion may be brief; even a single sentence to round out the paper may do the job. Remember that the main purpose of a concluding paragraph is to bring the paper to a close by sharing your final thoughts on the subject. (See p. 209 and p. 217 for two examples of concluding paragraphs.)

Learning to write a brief organized essay of this kind will help you to distinguish between the parts of an essay. Then when you're ready to write a longer paper, you'll be able to organize it clearly and elaborate on its design and content.

## Topic Sentences

A topic sentence does for a paragraph what a thesis statement does for an essay—it states the main idea. Like thesis statements, topic sentences must be phrased as complete thoughts to be proven or developed through the presentation of details. But the topic sentence introduces an idea or subtopic that is the right size to cover in a paragraph. The topic sentence doesn't have to be the first sentence in a paragraph. It may come at the end or even in the middle, but putting it first is most common.

Each body paragraph should contain only one main idea, and no detail or example should be in a paragraph if it doesn't support the topic sentence or help to transition from one paragraph to another. (See p. 209, p. 217, and pp. 228–229 for more examples of effective body paragraphs within essays and of paragraphs alone.)

## Organizing Body Paragraphs (or Single Paragraphs)

A single paragraph or a body paragraph within an essay is organized in the same way as an entire essay only on a smaller scale. Here's the way you learned to organize an essay:

- Thesis: stated or suggested in introductory paragraph
- First supporting paragraph
- Second supporting paragraph
- Additional supporting paragraphs
- Concluding paragraph

And here's the way to organize a paragraph:

- Topic sentence
- First supporting detail or example
- Second supporting detail or example
- Additional supporting details or examples
- Concluding or transitional sentence

You should have several details to support each topic sentence. If you find that you have little to say after writing the topic sentence, ask yourself what details or examples will make your reader believe that the topic sentence is true for you.

## Transitional Expressions

Transitional expressions within a paragraph and between paragraphs in an essay help the reader move from one detail or example to the next and from one supporting point to the next. When first learning to organize an essay, you might start each supporting paragraph in a paper with a transitional expression. Later, if they sound too repetitious, take these expressions out and replace them with more detailed prepositional phrases or dependent clauses, thereby improving your sentence variety.

Here are some transitions that show sequence:

Previously	Next	One (example, point, step, etc. . . .)
Later	Then	Another (example, point, step, etc. . . .)
Eventually	Finally	

Here are a few to show addition:

Also	First
Furthermore	Second
In addition	Third . . .

Here are several that show comparison or contrast:

Similarly	In the same way	In comparison
However	On the other hand	In contrast

Here are those that show consequence:

Therefore	Consequently	In conclusion
As a result	In other words	

## Exercise 2

### ADDING TRANSITIONAL EXPRESSIONS

Place appropriate transitional expressions from the lists above into the blanks in the following paragraph to make it read smoothly. Compare your answers with those in the back of the book.

This year, my family and I decided to celebrate the Fourth of July in a whole new way. \_\_\_\_\_, we always attended a fireworks show at the sports stadium near our house. The firework shows got better every year; \_\_\_\_\_, we were getting tired of the crowds and the noise. \_\_\_\_\_, we were starting to feel bad about our own lack of creativity. The goal this time was to have each family member think of a craft project, recipe, or game related to the Fourth. The result was a day full of fun activities and good things to eat—all created by us! \_\_\_\_\_, my sister Helen taught us to make seltzer rockets from an idea she found on the Internet. We used the fireless “firecrackers” as table decorations until late afternoon when we set them off. \_\_\_\_\_,

we ate dinner. Mom and Dad’s contribution was “Fourth of July Franks,” which were hot dogs topped with ketchup, onions, and a sprinkling of blue-corn chips. For desert, my brother Leon assembled tall parfaits made with layers of red and blue Jell-O cubes divided by ridges of whipped cream. \_\_\_\_\_, we played a game of charades in which all of the answers had something to do with the American flag, the Declaration of Independence, Paul Revere’s ride, and other such topics. We all enjoyed the Fourth so much that the events will probably become our new tradition.

## Assignment 7

### LET’S GET ORGANIZED!

To practice using transitions, write a paragraph about the steps you would take to reorganize an area at home or at work. It could be a small task, such as re-organizing your CDs or DVDs at home, or a larger task, such reorganizing your desk or work station at work. What area would you organize in a different way if you could? What materials would you need? How would you proceed? Report the steps in order, one by one, using transitional expressions from the list on p. 226 wherever you see fit. Sometimes it’s helpful to add humor to a “how-to” paragraph or essay to avoid sounding like an instruction manual.

## VI. SUPPORTING WITH DETAILS

Now you’re ready to support your main ideas with subtopics and specific details. That is, you’ll think of ways to prove that your thesis is true. How could you convince your reader that buying and selling on eBay has taught you about business and geography? You might write the following:

I have learned a great deal about business and geography by buying and selling items on eBay. (because)

1. I must be honest and fair in my dealings with other buyers and sellers.
2. I have to keep good records and be very organized.
3. I need to ship packages to cities and countries all over the world.

**NOTE**—Sometimes if you imagine a *because* at the end of your thesis statement, it will help you write your reasons or subtopics clearly and in parallel form.

## Types of Support

The subtopics developing a thesis and the details presented in a paragraph are not always *reasons*. Supporting points may take many forms based on the purpose of the essay or paragraph. Other kinds of support include the following:

*examples* (in an illustration)

*meanings* (in a definition)

*steps* or *stages* (in a how-to or process analysis)

*types* or *kinds* (in a classification)

*personal experiences* (in any kind of writing)

*facts, statistics, and expert opinions* (in an argument)

*causes* and/or *effects* (in a cause-and-effect analysis)

*similarities* and/or *differences* (in a comparison/contrast)

Whatever form they take, supporting points should develop the main idea expressed in the thesis statement of the essay or the topic sentence of the paragraph and help prove it to be true.

Here is the final draft of a student essay about an embarrassing experience. Notice how the body paragraphs follow the stages of the experience. And all of the details within the body paragraphs bring the experience to life.

### Super Salad?

About a year ago, I had a really embarrassing experience. It happened at a restaurant in Arcadia. I had moved to California three days before, so everything was new to me. Since I didn't have any relatives or friends in California, I had to move, unpack, and explore the neighborhood on my own. That day, I decided to treat myself to dinner as a reward, but I needed some courage because I had never dined out alone before.

As I opened the door of the restaurant, everybody looked at me, and the attention made me nervous. The manager greeted me with several menus in his hands and asked how many people were in my party. I said, "Just me." He led me over to a square table right in the middle of the

restaurant. It had four chairs around it and was set with four sets of napkins and silverware. The manager pulled out one of the chairs for me, and a busboy cleared away the three extra place settings.

A waitress arrived to take my order, and I tried to keep it simple. I asked for steak and a baked potato. Truthfully speaking, before I went to the restaurant, I had practiced ordering, but as she was speaking to me, I got flustered. She said, “Super salad?” as if it were a specialty of the house, so I said, “Okay, that sounds good.” Suddenly, her eyebrows went up, and she asked again, “Super salad?” And again I answered, “Yes.” Her face turned the color of a red leaf in fall. “You wanna a super salad?” she asked in a louder voice this time, and I answered with certainty, “Yes, that will be fine.” From her reaction, I knew that something was wrong.

When the waitress returned, she had the manager with her. He asked, “Do you want soup or a salad? You can’t have both.” I finally realized the stupid mistake I had been making. But the way the waitress had said “Soup or salad?” sounded just like “Super salad?” to my flustered ears. I clarified that I wanted a salad and eventually finished my meal without incident. I don’t remember how the steak tasted or whether I had sour cream on my potato. I just kept going over my moment of confusion in my head while trying to look like a normal person eating dinner.

At the time, I felt embarrassed and ashamed. Going out for a meal isn’t usually such a traumatic experience. Of course, whenever I tell the story, instead of sympathy, I get uncontrollable laughter as a response. I guess it is pretty funny. Now whenever I order a meal alone, I use a drive-thru. That way I can blame any misunderstandings on the microphones in the drive-thru lane.

*(Note: See pp. 231–232 for a rough draft of the preceding essay, before its final revisions.)*

Learning to support your main ideas with vivid details is perhaps the most important goal you can accomplish in this course. Many writing problems are not really *writing* problems but *thinking* problems. Whether you're writing a term paper or merely an answer to a test question, if you take enough time to think, you'll be able to write a clear thesis statement and support it with paragraphs full of meaningful details.

## Assignment 8

---

### WRITE AN ESSAY ON ONE OF YOUR INTERESTS

Return to the thesis statement you wrote about one of your interests for Assignment 6 on p. 224. Now write a short essay to support it. You can explain the allure of your interest, its drawbacks, or its benefits (such as the one about the Internet improving the student's reading and writing skills). Don't forget to use any free writing or clustering you may have done on the topic beforehand and to use transitional expressions.

## Assignment 9

---

### AN EMBARRASSING EXPERIENCE

Like the student writer of "Super Salad?" (pp. 228–229), we have all had embarrassing moments in our lives. Write an essay about a mildly embarrassing experience that you have had or one that you witnessed someone else have. Be sure to include the details that contributed to the embarrassment. For instance, the student writer showed how being in the restaurant alone made it worse. Had he been there with friends or family members, misunderstanding the waitress might have just been humorous, not embarrassing.

## VII. REVISING YOUR PAPERS

Great writers don't just sit down and write a final draft. They write and revise. You may have heard the expression "Easy writing makes hard reading." True, it is *easier* to turn in a piece of writing the first time it lands on paper. But you and your reader will be disappointed by the results. Try to think of revision as an opportunity instead of a chore, as a necessity instead of a choice.

Whenever possible, write the paper several days before the first draft is due. Let it sit for a while. When you reread it, you'll see ways to improve the organization or to add more details to a weak paragraph. After revising the paper, put it away for another day and try again to improve it. Save all of your drafts along the way to see the progress that you've made or possibly to return to an area left out in later drafts but that fits in again after revision.

Don't call any paper finished until you have worked it through several times. Revising is one of the best ways to improve your writing.

Take a look at an early draft of the student essay you read on pages 228–229. Notice that the student has revised his rough draft by crossing out some parts, correcting word forms, and adding new phrasing or reminders for later improvement.

## Super Salad?

### An Embarrassing Experience

About a year ago,

~~Once~~. I had a really embarrassing experience. It happened ~~a year ago~~ at a restaurant in Arcadia. I had moved to California three days before ~~that day~~, so everything was new to me. ~~As~~ I didn't have any ~~relations~~ or friends in California. I had to ~~(take care of~~ everything by myself.) That day, I decided to ~~go out to~~ dinner ~~by myself~~ as a ~~treat~~, but I needed some courage because I had never ~~been in a restaurant all~~ alone before.

~~As when~~ I opened the door of the restaurant. I ~~(gathered~~ everybody's attention, and it made me a little nervous.)

~~Eating in a restaurant alone was very new to me. The~~ manager asked me how many people were in my party, and I said, "Just me." He ~~walked~~ me over to a square table in the middle ~~part~~ of the restaurant. (It had four chairs pulled up to it, and he pulled out one for me to sit down.)

The waitress ~~came~~ to take my order, and I tried to keep it simple. I asked for steak and a baked potato.

~~Frankly~~ speaking, before I went to the restaurant, I had practiced ordering, but ~~by the~~ time she was speaking to me, I got ~~all~~ flustered and embarrassed. I thought she said, "Super salad?" so I said, "Okay, that sounds good."

Suddenly, her eyebrows went up, and she asked again, "Super salad?" and again I answered, "Yes." Her face turned the color of a red leaf in fall. "You wanna a

super salad?" she asked in a louder voice this time, and I answered, "Yes, that will be fine." From her reaction, I ~~thought~~ <sup>knew that</sup> something was wrong.

The next ~~time~~ <sup>when</sup> the waitress returned, she had the manager ~~of the restaurant~~ with her. He asked, "Do you want ~~soup or a salad?~~ You can't have both." I finally realized ~~what~~ <sup>the</sup> a stupid mistake I had been making. But I swear the way the waitress had said "Soup or salad?" sounded just like "Super salad?" <sup>to my flustered ears</sup> ~~as if that were a specialty of the restaurant.~~ \* add end of meal details \* move up

At the time, I was ~~really~~ <sup>\* add more</sup> embarrassed and ashamed ~~of myself.~~ <sup>But whenever I tell anybody the story, (they laugh so hard that I can't get anyone to feel sorry for me.)</sup> I <sup>Now</sup>

hardly ever eat alone at restaurants after my first disaster. I if do, I make it a drive-thru. That way I can always blame a misunderstanding on the microphones in the drive-thru lane.

combine and clarify

Can you see why each change was made? Analyzing the reasons for the changes will help you improve your own revision skills.

### Assignment 10

#### TO SHARE OR NOT TO SHARE?

In her essay "Neither a Borrower nor a Lender Be" on page 212, Joanne Kaufman writes about how upsetting it is to share her books with anyone else. She confesses that she might even lie to avoid lending a friend a prized volume from her shelves. Write about your own habits of sharing (or *not* sharing) something of your own—your car, your money, your time. . . . What are the reasons for your choices to share or not to share? How do your habits affect the other people in your life? Would you change your sharing habits if you could?

Write a rough draft of the paper and then set it aside. When you finish writing about your sharing habits, reread your paper to see what improvements you can make to your rough draft. Use the following checklist to help guide you through this or any other revision.

### REVISION CHECKLIST

Here's a checklist of revision questions. If the answer to any of these questions is no, revise that part of your paper until you're satisfied that the answer is yes.

1. Does the introductory paragraph introduce the topic clearly and suggest or include a thesis statement that the paper will explain or defend?
2. Does each of the other paragraphs support the thesis statement?
3. Does each body paragraph contain a clear topic sentence and focus on only one supporting point?
4. Do the body paragraphs contain enough details, and are transitional expressions well used?
5. Do the final thoughts expressed in the concluding paragraph bring the paper to a smooth close?
6. Does your (the writer's) voice come through?
7. Do the sentences read smoothly and appear to be correct?
8. Are words well-chosen and are spelling and punctuation consistent and correct?

### Exchanging Papers

This checklist can also be used when you exchange papers with another student in your class. Since you both have written a response to the same assignment, you will understand what the other writer went through and learn from the differences between the two papers.

### Proofreading Aloud

Finally, read your finished paper *aloud*. If you read it silently, you will see what you *think* is there, but you are sure to miss some errors. Read your paper aloud slowly,

pointing to each word as you read it to catch omissions and errors in spelling and punctuation. Reading a paper to yourself this way may take fifteen minutes to half an hour, but it will be time well spent. There are even word processing programs that will “speak” your text in a computer’s voice. Using your computer to read your paper to you can be fun as well as helpful. If you don’t like the way something sounds, don’t be afraid to change it! Make it a rule to read each of your papers *aloud* before handing it in.

Here are four additional writing assignments to help you practice the skills of writing and revising.

### **Assignment 11**

---

#### **ARE YOU AN OPTIMIST OR A PESSIMIST?**

The old test of optimism and pessimism is to look at a glass filled with water to the midpoint. An optimist, or positive thinker, would say it was “half *full*.” But a pessimist, or negative thinker, would say it was “half *empty*.” Which are you—an optimist or a pessimist? Organize your thoughts into the structure of a brief essay.

### **Assignment 12**

---

#### **ARE THERE DIFFERENT WAYS TO BE SMART?**

No word has just one meaning. Take, for example, the word *smart*. The common definition usually involves retaining a lot of knowledge and taking tests well. If that were the only meaning, then why do we call someone “street smart”? Think about the different ways a person can be “smart,” and write a long paragraph or short essay about the ways in which people in general and you in particular are smart.

### **Assignment 13**

---

#### **THE BEST (OR WORST) DECISION**

What was one of the best (or worst) decisions you ever made? Choose one that you feel comfortable sharing with others. When and why did you make the decision, and what effects has it had on your life? Organize the answers to these questions into the structure of a brief essay.

### **Assignment 14**

---

#### **I WOULD IF I COULD**

If you could travel anywhere right now, where would you go? Write a short essay about a trip that you would take if you suddenly had the time, money, and ability necessary to do it. Be sure to state what your destination would be, and use plenty of details for the reader to understand your reasons and what’s involved in getting there.

## VIII. PRESENTING YOUR WORK

Part of the success of a paper could depend on how it looks. The same paper written sloppily or typed neatly might even receive different grades. It is human nature to respond positively when a paper has been presented with care. Here are some general guidelines to follow.

### Paper Formats

Your papers should be typed or written on a computer, double-spaced, or copied neatly in ink on 8 1/2-by-11-inch paper on one side only. A one-inch margin should be left around the text on all sides for your instructor's comments. The beginning of each paragraph should be indented five spaces.

Most instructors have a particular format for presenting your name and the course material on your papers. Always follow such instructions carefully.

### Titles

Finally, spend some time thinking of a good title. Just as you're more likely to read a magazine article with an interesting title, so your readers will be more eager to read your paper if you give it a good title. Which of these titles from student papers would make you want to read further?

A Sad Experience

Of Mice and Me

Falling into "The Gap"

Buying Clothes Can Be Depressing

Hunting: The Best Sport of All?

Got Elk?

Learn these three rules about titles, and you'll always write them correctly:

1. Capitalize only the first letter of the important words in a title. Don't capitalize articles (*a*, *an*, or *the*), prepositions (*to*, *at*, *in*, *around* . . .), or connecting words (*and*, *or*, *but* . . .) *unless* they are the first or last words of the title.

A Night on Eagle Rock

To the Limit of Endurance and Beyond

2. Don't use quotation marks *unless* your title includes a quotation or the title of an article, short story, or poem.

Shouting "Fire!"

The Call of "The Raven"

3. Don't underline or use italics in your title *unless* it includes the title of a book, movie, play, or magazine.

Promises in The Pact

*Titanic* Sinks the Competition

Remember that "Haste is the assassin of elegance." Instead of rushing to finish a paper and turn it in, take the time to give your writing the polish that it deserves.

## IX. WRITING AN ARGUMENT

Writing assignments often ask you to take a stand on an issue or to share an opinion and prove that it is valid. Such writing is called *argumentation*, but it doesn't involve "fighting" or "arguing" in the sense that these words might be used in everyday life. In fact, intense emotions can weaken an argument if they are not balanced by logic and fairness. The purpose of a written argument is to convince the reader to value your opinion and possibly to agree with it.

### Taking a Stand and Proving Your Point

A strong written argument fulfills three basic requirements. First, it takes a clear stand on an issue or a controversial topic. Second, it provides logical and relevant support for the writer's position. And third, it discusses the issue or topic in a fair-minded way, taking other points of view into account. Let's look at some examples by both professional and student writers.

An in-class assignment asked students to write a short essay in response to the following prompt:

In his book *Crying: The Natural & Cultural History of Tears*, Tom Lutz explores the "universal" aspect of crying: he asks, "Why do we cry? Tears of happiness, tears of joy, the proud tears of a parent, tears of mourning, frustration, defeat—what do they have in common?" Lutz points out that, when it comes to weeping, "the vast majority of Americans fall into two camps, the criers and the dry." Lutz also notes that "The historical change for men over the last century makes crying, however infrequent, the rule rather than the exception" and argues that "this is undoubtedly a good thing. To deny tears is to deny a fundamental pleasure...." Considering Lutz's comments and your own experiences, do you accept crying as a valuable social activity? In other words, is crying "a good thing"? Why, or why not? Try to convince the reader with a fair-minded approach and with many examples for support.

As you might imagine, this assignment prompted a variety of responses from student writers. In the short essay that follows, one student argues that crying is an important coping mechanism:

Text not available due to copyright restrictions

Text not available due to copyright restrictions

Obviously, this essay would have been different if it had been an out-of-class assignment with a two- or three-week deadline. Then the student would have had access to Lutz's historical support to include with her personal observations and experiences. She could have interviewed friends and family and presented their ideas or done research on the subject of crying and shared various experts' information and opinions.

### THREE REQUIREMENTS OF A STRONG WRITTEN ARGUMENT

1. Takes a clear stand on an issue or a controversial topic.
2. Provides logical and relevant support (personal experiences, facts and statistics, opinions of experts, results of interviews).
3. Discusses the issue or topic in a fair-minded way, allowing for other points of view.

## Assignment 15

### TAKE A STAND ON ACADEMIC COMPETITION

As an exercise in argumentation, read and carefully consider the following paragraph proposing a few hypothetical (“What if . . . ?”) changes in education:

Education at all levels should be changed so that it is completely grade-free and noncompetitive. All letter grades should be eliminated and replaced by a pass/fail system, and scores of any kind should be provided as information only, not for the purpose of ranking. Students should also receive credit for self-study and Internet-gained knowledge and skills. Attendance and completion of assignments should be the only requirements for moving ahead in a course of study. In addition, students should be allowed to repeat courses, even after successfully completing all of the assignments, if they so choose. Students should take charge of their own educations and learn at their own pace.

Do you agree or disagree with the above “What if . . . ?” proposal to eliminate academic competition and give students more flexibility in their studies? Take care to consider the issue from all angles. How would such changes affect students, teachers, parents, school officials, and the public? Then use what you’ve learned about argumentation to write a brief essay in which you take a stand on one side of this issue or the other. You may disagree and argue that competition is an important motivator in education. Refer to the student sample “Cry First, Then Adjust” as a model for using relevant experiences and observations to prove your point, and remember to be fair-minded in your presentation.

### A Longer, More Challenging Reading

See if you can spot all of the elements of a strong written argument in the following professional sample from the book *American Bee*, by James Maguire. As a more in-depth reading than the shorter examples above, it may require you to look up several words in the dictionary. Notice that when Maguire quotes the statements

of experts, he is careful to use “Baron *says*” only once in the reading. He includes a variety of verbs (*recalls, explains, believes, claims, notes . . .*) to identify the other quotations so that the reader doesn’t get bored.

Although you may feel challenged by some of the vocabulary in this excerpt, your own experiences with computers and cell phones should make it easy for you to relate to the question it raises: Are the Internet and other technologies hurting the English language? See if you can discover Maguire’s answer to this question as you read.

## Science Fiction: The Future of Spelling

If we look up from our massive Merriam-Webster’s *Unabridged* for a moment and peer off into the future of orthography, what do we see? If we dare gaze into the inky unknown of the future, where is spelling headed in the generations to come?

The English language and the attendant chaos of its spelling has, over the last 1,500 years, seen periods of stability and periods of change—with the emphasis on change. Now in the twenty-first century, the language faces an agent of change even more powerful than marauding Anglo-Saxon tribesmen or William the Conqueror. This revolutionary force is the Internet, that great gaggle of pixel-borne emoticons, and it will surely have a profound impact on written communication between U & me in the yrs a head :)

But how, exactly, will the Internet change language and spelling in the decades (and millennia) ahead? To explore that, I spoke with two leading language theorists, Dennis Baron, professor of linguistics at the University of Illinois at Champaign-Urbana (the day we spoke he was set to give a talk about the Internet’s effect on language), and Geoffrey Nunberg, a frequent National Public Radio commentator and a researcher at Stanford University’s Center for the Study of Language and Information.

Baron, by the way, often took part in spelling bees as a boy. He was a superb speller but the contests made him terribly anxious. “I couldn’t wait to make a mistake so I could sit down,” he recalls. Later, for five years he was a judge for a regional bee in Central Illinois.

As to how the Internet will affect language, he explains: “I have no idea—but that’s one of the questions I put on the final exam.”

In truth, Baron does have a vision of Net-influenced language. He believes that language as we know it will survive; in fact, he postulates that much of its basic structure will remain intact. To back up his hypothesis, he points out that many of the new written forms, like e-mail and text messaging on

cell phones, started out with a “frontier mentality”—anything goes, and rules were thrown by the wayside as communication rocketed down the information superhighway. But over time, he observes, a self-organizing ethic has set in. “Now there are all these guides about how to write a correct e-mail, and all our e-mail software has spell-check.”

Human tribes, even electronically based ones, have a tendency to self-regulate by establishing norms and then enforcing those norms through peer pressure. “I call it the civilizing of the electronic frontier,” Baron says. This is true even in the semiliterate world of instant messaging, he claims—although this statement may strain credulity (and indeed, Baron himself doesn’t view instant messaging as semiliterate). With IM, “if you violate the conventions of the community, they jump on you, whether it’s for being too formal or too informal.”

Baron, demonstrating that he’s a truly fearless linguist, has conducted research into IM speech patterns. He finds the subject fascinating, but research was difficult: “It’s hard to get IM transcripts—my son won’t show me his.” After examining extensive records of IM conversations, he concluded that they do not point to the end of traditional language. “A lot of them are fairly formal,” he notes. While they’re full of acronyms and three-letter words, “there are sentences and punctuation—there’s nothing about the medium that says you can’t be formal or informal.”

Looking ahead to, say, 2050, he sees today’s orthographic conventions surviving without major revolution. “I don’t see that there will be vast changes in spelling,” he says, because “there’s enough of a sense of conventionality that underlies how we think about language.” (While he’s on the subject, he observes that his students’ spelling is better than it used to be.)

So to those who feel that the Internet will be the death of English—and he concedes many feel this way—he counters: “Not at all.” The Internet is expanding language in new ways, “but it’s an infinitely expandable language—it’s always been pretty adaptable.”

Geoff Nunberg concurs that contemporary spelling will survive the onslaught of Internet-based communication modes. He dismisses the notion that instant messaging’s emoticon-heavy spelling style will alter the language. “They said that about the telegraph, too,” he says. (However, he does loathe the word *emoticon*, referring to it as “one of the worst words ever—it deserves to die horribly in a head-on crash with *infotainment*.”)

Standardized spelling has attained true cultural saturation, Nunberg notes. “More people spell well now than ever before. That’s something that people don’t believe,” he says. “You read Jefferson, and he didn’t know how to spell. With *knowledge* he left out the *w*—and that didn’t mean Jefferson didn’t know about knowledge, if anybody did.”

“Look at eighteenth-century spelling, and they were spelling *publik* with a *k*, but since the time of Dickens [the mid-1800s], spelling has changed very little,” points out Nunberg.

In fact, theorizes Nunberg, spelling’s evolution has reached a plateau. “Spelling has changed less in the last hundred years than in the last hundred

years proceeding, and that was less than the hundred years before. It's changing less and less," he says. "English spelling is pretty much frozen now. I think there'll be very few changes in spelling in the next two hundred years—it's hard to imagine any."

But if spelling will remain stable, the environment it exists in will change markedly, Baron forecasts. Text will be submerged in an increasingly multimedia-saturated visual landscape; language will less often stand on its own. As Renaissance printers felt it was a step forward to include woodcut illustrations in manuscripts, so we will push this practice to its extreme by never allowing words to walk out the door without a video-audio-holograph chaperone. "People are writing academic papers online with embedded video," Baron notes.

The big break from the past may come when speech recognition software is perfected. At that point we'll be able to write simply by talking: Speak into your computer's recorder, and it'll do all the messy work of punctuation and spelling. This could result in the elimination of the keyboard, Baron speculates. "We'd get back to oral composition—reinventing Homer."

That, it appears, would be a major step backward. Eliminate writing? This painstaking mind-lingual-hand mode of communication is usually far more detailed and evolved than speech. The written word has carried us up from the savanna and given us Shakespeare, Jane Austen, and E.E. Cummings, not to mention *People* magazine.

But Baron, ever the futurist, is unconcerned with the possible extinction of the written word. As to the assertion that writing is typically a more advanced means of communication than speaking, "maybe it is, and maybe it isn't," he says. "We have a prejudice in thinking that putting it all down on paper somehow makes it more real than telling it to someone—I wonder if that actually is psychologically the case."

At any rate, Baron opines, whatever changes affect human communication, one thing is certain: "We're not going to give up words—words will never die."

Now that you've read James Maguire's excerpt, consider the following questions. What is his argument about the future of English in this technologically advanced time? How does Maguire use the opinions of the two experts to help him convince his reader? Where does he present details that show other opinions or possible outcomes, proving that he is fair-minded?

By challenging yourself to read at a level a little beyond your comfort zone, you'll improve as a reader and a writer and will prepare yourself to succeed in future classes.

## X. WRITING SUMMARIES

One of the best ways to learn to read carefully and write concisely is to write summaries. A summary is a brief piece of writing (a paragraph, usually) that presents the main ideas of a reading—a book chapter, an article, a speech, or a long essay—in your own words. It does not call for any reactions, opinions, or experiences of

your own for support. Summaries contain only the most important points of the original and leave everything else out. Writing summaries strengthens your reading and writing skills because you have to understand a reading, gather the gist of its supporting points, and rephrase its essence in your own words.

A summary, therefore, will always be much shorter than the original. Writing something *short* sounds easy, but actually it isn't. Condensing all the main ideas of a reading into a short paragraph is a time-consuming task—not to be undertaken in the last hour before class. However, if you practice writing summaries conscientiously, you will improve as a reader and will be able to write concise, clear, smooth paragraphs. These skills will then carry over into your reading and writing for other courses.

### Sample Summary

Read the following excerpt from the book *Bollywood Crafts—20 Projects Inspired by Popular Indian Cinema*. It will be followed by a sample summary.

## Bollywood Film Facts

Bollywood is the biggest film industry in the world. Approximately one thousand films are made in India under the “Bollywood” umbrella each year (that is double the amount of Hollywood films) and over 12 million Indians watch a Bollywood film every day. The films are also popular throughout the Middle East, Russia and Africa, and, increasingly, Western audiences are surrendering to the charms of Indian cinema.

Bollywood is also referred to as Hindi cinema—there are 22 official languages spoken in India; however, the major movies are made in Hindi as it is the country's dominant language, though films in other languages, such as Tamil and Urdu, are also made. Although the main hub of production companies are based in Mumbai (Bombay), films are shot in locations all over the country and recent films have even been set abroad [in England, Europe, and America].

Like mainstream Hollywood movies, Bollywood films also fall into specific genres, such as action or romance, but most are multi-genre, family movies. In India, going to the movies is a family event, and often several generations watch

a film together. This means the content has to appeal to all. It also means filmmakers have to be creative in their approach to telling narratives. How they express emotions is a key element. Emotions are represented not just through acting, but also through the use of spectacle—songs and dance.

The key to a successful [Bollywood] movie is to have a popular soundtrack, and for the choreography that accompanies it to be equally impressive. Song sequences usually start in the middle of a dialogue and are a break from the reality of the storyline. Characters are transported to different locations and their costumes become very significant; a leading lady can go through several costume changes per dance scene, which makes for compelling viewing! When you're watching a song from a film, it's best to ignore the subtitles and instead let yourself be entertained by the visuals. The choreography is a mixture of Indian dancing styles with global influences such as MTV. Extras play a key role in bringing the dances to life, and as a viewer, I often want to get up and join in!

Some Bollywood films are inspired by Hollywood tales, but most are original ideas, often based on moral or family dilemmas. Like Hollywood, the star system is an important part of Bollywood and the biggest actors and actresses are celebrities in their own right. Unlike Hollywood, however, Indian actors often work on several films at one time, even switching between movie sets in the same day. And while Hollywood left behind its musicals in the 1950s, Bollywood films always contain a performance element. Actors have to demonstrate impeccable dancing skills as well as acting ability.

If you have yet to watch a Bollywood movie, don't worry! They are far more accessible than you may think, with cinemas and rental stores responding to audience demands by showing and stocking new movies. Don't be alarmed by

the length; Bollywood movies are longer than other films to allow for the songs, but there is always an interval [intermission].

Bollywood films are an exciting and original contribution to the filmmaking world and, as the popularity of Bollywood continues to spread around the globe, Indian filmmakers are getting more progressive with their plots, special effects and visuals. This means that films will develop stylistically even further and continue to get better—something I’m really looking forward to!

*Source: From *Bollywood Crafts—20 Projects Inspired by Popular Indian Cinema*, by Momtaz Begum-Hossain, a freelance crafts maker and customized clothing designer ([www.momtazbh.co.uk](http://www.momtazbh.co.uk)). Reprinted by permission of the author.*

A good summary begins with a statement of the reading’s “biggest” idea, written in your own words. An effective summary does not just translate or re-order the words of the original. Some single words from the original—“India,” “Hollywood,” and “Bollywood,” in this case—may be used in a summary when they lack a substitute. However, as the writer of an effective summary, you must find new ways to phrase the original reading’s ideas, present them in a condensed form, and reveal your understanding of the original in the process.

Here is a sample of an effective summary of the excerpt:

In “Bollywood Film Facts,” Momtaz Begum-Hossain explains that India has its own version of Hollywood—called Bollywood—that produces movies that are growing in popularity worldwide. Bollywood releases twice as many movies a year as Hollywood does. Unlike Hollywood movies, Bollywood movies can include different languages besides India’s main language, Hindi. These films also include more music and dancing than Hollywood movies do. Elaborate, well-performed songs are essential and unique to Bollywood films. Therefore, movie stars in India have to act well and dance well, too. Indian movies are longer than Hollywood movies and might require subtitles, but they continue to attract new audiences because of their high entertainment value and universal appeal.

## Assignment 16

### WRITE A SHORT SUMMARY: ASK YOURSELF, “WHAT’S THE BIG IDEA?”

Your aim in writing your summary should be to give someone who has not read the material a clear idea of its content. First, read the following excerpt from the introduction to the book *Catwatching*, by Desmond Morris. Then follow the instructions given after it.

### Cat Lovers vs. Dog Lovers

Because of this difference between domestic cats and domestic dogs, cat lovers tend to be rather different from dog lovers. As a rule they have a stronger personality bias toward independent thought and action. Artists like cats; soldiers like dogs. The much-lauded “group loyalty” phenomenon is alien to both cats and cat lovers. . . . The ambitious Yuppie, the aspiring politician, the professional athlete, these are not typical cat owners. It is hard to picture a football player with a cat in his lap—much easier to envisage him taking his dog for a walk.

Those who have studied cat owners and dog owners as two distinct groups report that there is also a gender bias. Cat lovers show a greater tendency to be female. This is not surprising in view of the division of labor that developed during human evolution. Prehistoric males became specialized as group hunters, while the females concentrated on food-gathering and childrearing. This difference led to a human male “pack mentality” that is far less marked in females. . . . [S]o the modern dog has much more in common with the human male than with the human female. . . .

The argument will always go on—feline self-sufficiency and individualism versus canine camaraderie and good-fellowship. But it is important to stress that in making a valid point I have caricatured the two positions. In reality there are many people who enjoy equally the company of both cats and dogs. All of us,

or nearly all of us, have both feline and canine elements in our personalities. We have moods when we want to be alone and thoughtful, and other times when we wish to be in the center of a crowded, noisy room.

A good way to begin the summary of a reading is to figure out the big idea the author wants to get across to the reader. Write that idea down now *before reading further*.

How honest are you with yourself? Did you write that big idea down? If you didn't, *write it now* before you read further.

You may have written something like this:

Certain characteristics make people prefer either cats or dogs as pets.

Using this big idea as your first sentence, summarize the rest of the reading by restating its most important points. *Be sure to put them in your own words*. The first draft of your summary may be almost as long as the original reading.

Now cut it down by including only the essential points and by getting rid of any details, repetition, or wordiness. Stay within a limit of between 100–120 words, and you'll get to the kernel of the author's thought and understand the reading fully.

When you have written the best summary you can, then compare it with the sample summary in the Answers section on page 322. If you look at the sample sooner, you'll cheat yourself of the opportunity to learn the difficult task of writing summaries. If you read the sample summary before writing your own, it will be impossible not to be influenced by it. So do your own thinking and writing, and then compare.

## SUMMARY CHECKLIST

Even though your summary is different from the sample, it may be just as good. If you're not sure how yours compares, consider these questions:

1. Did you include the same main ideas *without* adding your own reactions or opinions?
2. Did you leave out all unnecessary words and examples?
3. Did you rephrase the writer's ideas, not just recopy them?
4. Does the summary read smoothly?
5. Would someone who had not read the article get a clear idea of it from your summary?

## Assignment 17

### RESPOND TO A READING IN ONE OF THREE WAYS

In the following excerpt from the book *Bollywood: An Insider's Guide*, Fuad Omar offers a look behind the scenes of the filmmaking process in India. *Bollywood* is a term often used to identify popular Indian cinema; the term combines “Bombay” (now known as Mumbai) and “Hollywood.” Bollywood films mix elements of romance, action, comedy, and drama in stories that include song and dance numbers that appear in the middle of scenes. After reading Omar’s excerpt, respond to it in one of the following three ways:

1. Write a summary of the excerpt’s “big ideas.” Be sure to put them in your own words and to organize them in the form of a paragraph of between 100–120 words.
2. Write a short essay in which you describe your favorite type of film or TV show at the moment. How would the behind-the-scenes activities of your favorite type of show compare to those Omar describes in the world of Bollywood?
3. Fuad Omar details the hard work that goes into making Bollywood films, which he says are meant “to sell dreams.” Write an essay in which you argue one side of the following question: Do you think that the main purpose of all films is “to sell dreams”? Convince the reader by presenting your ideas clearly, fairly, and completely (using convincing examples).

As you read Omar’s excerpt, notice that he punctuates his sentences very lightly, creating a conversational tone that fits his purpose to provide “An Insider’s Guide” to Bollywood.

### **Bollywood: Behind the Glamour**

Bollywood is the name given to the Indian film industry and I literally have loathed that word from day one. It’s too camp and similar to Hollywood in sound, in fact, it’s a direct derivation of the term. It implies the Indian film industry is a cheap imitation or wannabe second rate version of Hollywood, which is not the case. In fact, historically speaking India was making films way before its American counterparts and so we should say they’re copying us! But enough of the banter, I put up with the term and moved on. Bollywood is a completely different world from the place we live in. There are characters, genuine people, hopefuls,

technically brilliant minded individuals and amazing families. There are also a lot of parties, many fake people (read as having to be courteous) and hours that come from within other hours of the day. The Indian film industry is anything but glamorous. It looks great on-screen, but to create that perfect image takes a lot of people, a lot of time, and a whole lot of effort and retakes. Yes every heroine looks beautiful and every man looks idealistic, but that's what the industry is there to do: sell dreams.

Even in the photos everyone looks perfect, carrying off the most absurd costumes with panache and style and without a morsel of regret, and you think these people have it easy. I've heard it many times: people come up to you and say how easy it is to be an actor in Indian cinema and how all you have to do is have makeup put on, perform a few really easy lines, and dance with beautiful girls. You wish. It's extremely tough and the hours are gruelling, the pressure immense, and it's true when they say "every Friday holds someone's fortune" because when a film that's taken years to complete finally makes it onto the big screen, it only takes three shows in the first day to decide it and its stars' fates.

An actress I know very well was shooting for two films one weekend and leaving for shows the following day. [Actors in Indian films perform in stage shows regularly.] She woke up and was on set by 5 am, makeup took two hours almost, she began the shot not before midday and wrapped up only two scenes by 6 pm, was scurried by car to another location and walked into another film set, knackered as can be, and began mouthing dialogues of a completely different character within seconds as she was being made up for a different film. She finished at 3 am, went home to finish packing for the shows she's meant to depart for in less than six hours and, while she was packing and instructing friends what would need to be taken in which suitcase, a dress designer came round (yep at 4 am) and began

a costume fitting which needed to be done for a shoot when she came back. 24 hours after her day began she was still working, having only napped in the car. On landing at the destination wearing dark glasses and smiling for everyone (because dare I say no one would understand an actress being cranky in public, after all she's not allowed to, right, whatever the conditions). Greeted by hoards of fans that cause a security issue, she plods through to TV cameras who want to know how it is to be on this tour and catch her while they can. She smiles and delivers an impeccably perfect two-minute interview before being whisked away in a limo to the hotel where she has three hours to catch up on some sleep before a press conference to promote the very show she's on. Still sound glamorous?

The only glamorous part is what you see on screen, what you don't see is the hard work that goes into making that one song look as it does. All the different costumes and locations may be made fun of at times, but each location was a plane trip away, every costume took hours to get into, forward planning and the right lighting and even then all you see are edited shots composed together from hours of footage to make it look like a wondrous song. It aint all song and dance though. Rehearsals for shows, in between script-readings, story narrations, photo-shoots, interviews and, of course, shooting, there's very little time left when you're in this mad, bad world of Bollywood.

So that's partly what some of it is like, but what about the fame, money and glory? Well it's not a secure industry because one flop and you're written off courtesy of certain journalists, so you really better make good while you're here. You can make lots of money but only with the right filmmakers and deals, and if you work with the best production houses, working with them is reward enough to cause a dent in your pay packet, so what do you choose—moolah or good films? The only guarantee you have is that there is no guarantee. If you keep your

head down, work hard and round the clock for a few years, you may get enough bank to support your wife and kids, who you might not get to see all that much, because did I mention you're working all hours and all across the world?

But that's what the industry is: a dream factory. It produces and sells dreams to the public, and they take it as escapism or entertainment that takes them away from reality or gives them hope that a better life is within reach. It's a dream factory because once you enter the industry, your eyes are full of hope and dreams and you can live out every role you wanted to as a kid everyday and have a lot of fun. Just don't think it's not hard work.

Don't get me wrong though, everyone (well almost everyone) loves it here. You think an eighteen hour shoot is a long time, but when you get there and don the greasepaint, crack a laugh with your co-stars and the technicians, you actually enjoy it and make the atmosphere as pleasant as possible and time can go fast. I've yet to come across a miserable actor who regrets being in the industry; it's a great job and you can live out amazing experiences every day. I'm just saying it isn't the glamour industry many perceive it to be. So what's it like being the guy who is neither of this world nor that, but sits on the fence that is the celluloid 70mm screen and listens to the audience to report back to those behind the screen and vice versa? I'll tell you another day. But for now, Welcome to Bollywood! It's mad, it's fun and it's full of dreams, just don't give anyone a hard time because you think it's an easy job.

*Source: Bollywood: An Insider's Guide* by Fuad Omar. Reprinted with permission of the author. Copyright 2006, pp. 11–15.

# Answers

## WORD CHOICE AND SPELLING

### WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED, SET 1 (PP. 8–12)

#### EXERCISE 1

1. advice, a
2. a
3. accept
4. break
5. choose
6. already, course
7. are, due
8. know, do
9. have, chose
10. feel, it's

#### EXERCISE 2

1. new
2. It's, due
3. choose, an
4. a, its
5. already
6. complement
7. choose
8. It's, know, accept
9. hear
10. an, it's

#### EXERCISE 3

1. It's, new
2. have, accepted
3. feel, an
4. chose
5. already, fourth
6. fill, except, have
7. hear, an, advice
8. are
9. course, effects
10. complemented

#### EXERCISE 4

1. clothes, an
2. Due, a
3. accept
4. course, are, all ready
5. coarse, new
6. conscious
7. an
8. break, feel
9. have, already
10. It's, no

**EXERCISE 5**

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. are        | 6. effects    |
| 2. our        | 7. know, fill |
| 3. accept     | 8. It's, feel |
| 4. It's       | 9. effect     |
| 5. New, forth | 10. fill, an  |

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

In the middle of a debate in my speech class last week, I suddenly became very self-~~conscience~~ *conscious*. My heart started beating faster, and I didn't ~~no~~ *know* what to ~~due~~ *do*. I looked around to see if my show of nerves was having a ~~an affect~~ *effect* on the audience. Of ~~coarse~~ *course*, they could ~~here~~ *hear* my voice trembling. The topic that we were debating involved whether it would be best to eliminate letter grades in college, and everyone else was doing so well. But for some reason, my face turned red, and I would ~~of~~ *have* left the room if the door had been closer. After the debate, my classmates tried to give me ~~complements~~ *compliments*, but I ~~new~~ *knew* that they were just trying to make me feel better.

**WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED, SET 2 (PP. 17–21)****EXERCISE 1**

- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 1. There     | 6. past, lose         |
| 2. through   | 7. there              |
| 3. to        | 8. led, through, were |
| 4. They're   | 9. than               |
| 5. personnel | 10. whether           |

**EXERCISE 2**

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. lose              | 6. principal            |
| 2. where             | 7. who's                |
| 3. quiet, write      | 8. principal            |
| 4. personnel         | 9. whether, quiet, past |
| 5. there, two, right | 10. than                |

**EXERCISE 3**

- |                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. You're, where                | 3. too, loose, too       |
| 2. Whether, you're, woman, wear | 4. They're, quite, right |

5. who's, than  
 6. personal  
 7. your, you're, who's, wear  
 8. passed, right  
 9. whose  
 10. woman, weather

**EXERCISE 4**

1. quite  
 2. There, two, women  
 3. principal  
 4. they're, their  
 5. whose  
 6. to, woman  
 7. right  
 8. who's, than  
 9. too  
 10. to, to

**EXERCISE 5**

1. your  
 2. you're, than  
 3. whether  
 4. piece, women  
 5. They're, their  
 6. principle  
 7. to, than  
 8. principal, their  
 9. to, then  
 10. they're, through

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

~~Their~~ *There* is a house that I have ~~past~~ *passed* every day for the ~~passed~~ *past* ten years. It's on a ~~quite~~ *quiet* street, and it has ~~too~~ big trees in its front yard. Whenever I drive ~~threw~~ *through* that part of the neighborhood, I pull over and admire that house. The house isn't prettier ~~then~~ *than* the other houses on the street, but I feel a ~~personnel~~ *personal* attachment to it that I can't explain. I even call it "my house" whenever I tell anyone about it. I don't know ~~who's~~ *whose* house it is now, but if I can afford it, someday I would like to buy "my house" and live ~~they're~~ *there* for the rest of my life.

**THE EIGHT PARTS OF SPEECH (PP. 25–27)****EXERCISE 1**

1. Good movies entertain people.  
       adj     n           v           n
2. They also educate and motivate people.  
       pro adv   v     conj   v           n
3. Well-written characters seem real on the screen.  
       adj           n           v     adj prep     n

- adj n conj n v adj n prep n  
 4. Their downfalls or successes have lasting effects on the audience.
- n v n prep adj n prep pro  
 5. A person sees a movie with a wild character in it.
- pro conj pro v prep n  
 6. She or he learns about wildness.
- adv n v prep n  
 7. Often, the story revolves around a secret.
- pro v n conj v pro prep n  
 8. Someone discovers the secret and reveals it in the end.
- n adv v adv conj adj n v  
 9. The story usually moves ahead when the main character changes.
- adj n v adv adv adj  
 10. Such changes are not always positive.

## EXERCISE 2

- n v adj n n prep n  
 1. Clyde Tombaugh discovered the ninth “planet,” Pluto, in 1930.
- n v prep n prep n prep n  
 2. Tombaugh died in 1997 at the age of 90.
- n v adj n prep n adj n pro v  
 3. Scientists loaded Tombaugh’s ashes onto New Horizons, a space probe that was  
 v prep n prep n  
 launched in January of 2006. (Note: *That* is a relative pronoun standing for “probe.”)
- n v v prep n prep n  
 4. New Horizons will arrive near Pluto in 2015.
- prep n prep n n v n prep n prep adj  
 5. After the launch of New Horizons, astronomers deleted Pluto from the list of real  
 n  
 planets.
- pro v conj adj n v v adj adj n  
 6. They determined that real planets must control their own orbits. (Note: *That* is  
 a conjunction joining two clauses.)
- n v adj n prep n prep adj n  
 7. Pluto is an icy ball under the influence of Neptune’s orbit.
- n v n prep adj n  
 8. Astronomers put Pluto into a new category.

9. Therefore, the official number of planets has changed.  
adv adj n prep n v v
10. Wow! That is an amazing development.  
interj pro v adj n

**EXERCISE 3**

1. Mechanical pencils are delicate instruments.  
adj n v adj n
2. I see other students with them.  
pro v adj n prep pro
3. Then I buy one.  
adv pro v pro
4. I open the package.  
pro v n
5. I load the pencil with the tiny shaft of lead.  
pro v n prep adj n prep n
6. As I put the pencil tip down on the paper, the lead snaps off.  
conj pro v adj n adv prep n n v adv
7. Am I an unrefined clod?  
v pro adj n
8. I believe that I am.  
pro v conj pro v
9. Now I know my limitations.  
adv pro v adj n
10. Ballpoint pens and wooden pencils are the only writing tools for me.  
adj n conj adj n v adj adj n prep pro

**EXERCISE 4**

1. The following old sayings still have meaning today.  
adj adj n adv v n adv
2. A penny saved is a penny earned.  
n adj v n adj
3. A stitch in time saves nine (or nine stitches).  
n prep n v n adj n
4. Haste makes waste.  
n v n

- v pro v adj n  
**5.** Love me, love my dog.
- n v adj adj n  
**6.** A picture is worth a thousand words.
- pro conj pro pro v v adj  
**7.** He or she who hesitates is lost.
- n v conj pro v v n  
**8.** Time flies when you are having fun.
- n v adv adj prep adj n prep n  
**9.** The grass is always greener on the other side of the fence.
- n prep adj adj n v prep adj n  
**10.** The truth of many old sayings lies beneath their surfaces.

**EXERCISE 5**

- adj n v adj n conj adj n  
**1.** Some people collect rare coins and paper money.
- adj adj n v adv adj  
**2.** The Del Monte twenty-dollar bill is very famous.
- n v v conj pro v adj n  
**3.** The mint made a mistake when it printed this bill.
- n prep n adv v pro prep n prep adj  
**4.** A sticker from a banana accidentally attached itself to the paper during the printing process.
- adj adj conj adj n v n prep n  
**5.** The round green and red sticker became a part of the bill.
- adj n adv v prep adj n  
**6.** Such mistakes usually lead to a bill's destruction.
- adj adj n adv v n prep adj n  
**7.** This flawed note, however, left the mint with the normal twenties.
- n adv v adj adj n  
**8.** Experts immediately authenticated its rare status.
- n adv v prep n prep n  
**9.** The bill first sold on eBay for \$10,000.
- adv n prep n v n prep adj adj n  
**10.** Eventually, a couple from Texas paid \$25,000 for this one-of-a-kind note.

**PARAGRAPH EXERCISE**

n v n pro v adj adj n pro v adv  
 Air contains aerosols, which are invisible solid particles [that measure] roughly  
 adj n prep n adj n v n n adj conj  
 0.1 micrometer in diameter. These aerosols include dust, sand, volcano and  
 adj n adj n adj n n adj n conj n n conj  
 meteor ash, car exhaust, factory smoke, pollen, ocean salt, and microbes. Rain and  
 n v pro prep adj n prep n  
 snow wash many of these aerosols from the air.

**ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS (PP. 31–34)****EXERCISE 1**

1. adverb adding to the verb *enroll*
2. adjective adding to the noun *tutors*
3. adjective adding to the noun *areas*
4. adjective adding to the noun *area*
5. adverb adding to the verb *sit*
6. adverb adding to the verb *works*
7. adjective adding to the noun *support*
8. adjective adding to the noun *assistant*
9. adverb adding to the verb *use*
10. adjective adding to the noun *results*

**EXERCISE 2**

1. adverb adding to the adjective *one*
2. adjective adding to the noun *textbook*
3. adjective adding to the pronoun *I*
4. adverb adding to the adjective *used*
5. adverb adding to the adjective *new*
6. adjective adding to the pronoun *one*
7. adjective adding to the noun *students*
8. adverb adding to the adverb and adjective *heavily marked*



adv adj adj

9. I was very happy with my progress as a clown.

adj adj adj

10. We learned many valuable skills during our first clown seminar.

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

I didn't do very ~~good~~ *well* during my first semester at community college. I feel ~~badly~~ *bad* whenever I think of it. I skipped classes and turned in sloppy work. My counselor warned me about my negative attitude, but I was ~~reat~~ *really* stubborn. I dropped out for a year and a half. Now that I have come back to college, I am even ~~stubborner~~ *more stubborn* than before. I go to every class and do my best. Now, a college degree is ~~only~~ *my only* goal.

**CONTRACTIONS (PP. 36–40)****EXERCISE 1**

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. you've, hadn't  | 6. couldn't        |
| 2. that's          | 7. no contractions |
| 3. It's            | 8. There's         |
| 4. no contractions | 9. It's            |
| 5. no contractions | 10. Let's, don't   |

**EXERCISE 2**

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. wasn't          | 6. don't, don't |
| 2. I'll            | 7. there's      |
| 3. isn't           | 8. you'll       |
| 4. It's, It's, I'm | 9. haven't      |
| 5. you've          | 10. we'd        |

**EXERCISE 3**

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. There's, that's | 6. aren't          |
| 2. wasn't          | 7. They're         |
| 3. don't, it's     | 8. haven't         |
| 4. hasn't          | 9. They've         |
| 5. don't           | 10. they're, don't |

**EXERCISE 4**

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. aren't         | 6. That's       |
| 2. They're, isn't | 7. don't, won't |
| 3. we're          | 8. there'll     |
| 4. doesn't        | 9. shouldn't    |
| 5. don't, weren't | 10. Let's, it's |

**EXERCISE 5**

- |                 |                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I'm, she's   | 6. that's                |
| 2. We've, we've | 7. We've, can't, doesn't |
| 3. aren't       | 8. we'd                  |
| 4. they're      | 9. that's, it's, they're |
| 5. they're      | 10. isn't                |

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

~~Have~~ I've had the same group of friends since I was in junior high school. Now that ~~we are~~ we're all in college, my friends ~~do not~~ don't spend as much time on schoolwork as I do. Whenever ~~I am~~ I'm studying for an exam or working on a project, they call and ask if ~~I would~~ I'd like to see a movie or go to a game. ~~It is~~ It's the worst in the summer. ~~Have~~ I've been enrolling in summer school classes for the past two years so that ~~I will~~ I'll be ready to transfer soon. However, none of my friends has taken a class during the summer. At the rate ~~they are~~ they're going, my friends ~~will not~~ won't ever transfer.

**POSSESSIVES (PP. 45–46)****EXERCISE 4**

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. bat's, animal's | 6. no possessives   |
| 2. patient's       | 7. patients', bat's |
| 3. person's        | 8. enzyme's         |
| 4. condition's     | 9. DSPA's           |
| 5. bat's           | 10. bat's           |

**EXERCISE 5**

1. pencil's
2. England's
3. valley's
4. world's
5. artist's, writer's
6. pencils'
7. Conte's
8. pencil's
9. pencil's (Note: The word *its* is a possessive pronoun that needs no apostrophe.)
10. students'

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

Only the five possessive words required apostrophes. Note their placement before or after the *s*.

I have a cat named Shelby who always keeps me company when I do my homework. This ~~eats~~ *cat's* favorite spot to lie down is right in the middle of my desk. Whenever she can, Shelby makes herself comfortable on top of my actual homework. All of my ~~classes~~ *classes'* handouts have fur all over them. Many people are allergic to ~~eats~~ *cats'* fur, so I wipe off each ~~days~~ *day's* homework sheets before I turn them in to my teachers. The noise from ~~Shelbys~~ *Shelby's* purring helps me relax when I'm working on a difficult math problem or starting a new writing assignment.

**REVIEW OF CONTRACTIONS AND POSSESSIVES (PP. 47–48)**

1. isn't
2. cloud's, it's
3. aren't
4. They're
5. Sloane's, clouds'
6. shouldn't
7. They're, they're
8. artist's
9. mustn't
10. It's, cloudscape's

**A Journal of My Own**

*I've* been keeping a journal ever since I was in high school. I *don't* write it for my *teachers'* sake. I *wouldn't* turn it in even if they asked me to. *It's* mine, and it helps me remember all of the changes *I've* gone through so far in my life. The way I see it, a *diary's* purpose *isn't* just to record the facts; *it's* to capture my true feelings.

When I record the *day's* events in my journal, they *aren't* written in minute-by-minute details. Instead, if *I've* been staying at a *friend's* house for the weekend, *I'll* write something like this: "*Sharon's* the only friend I have who listens to my

whole sentence before starting hers. *She's* never in a hurry to end a good conversation. Today we talked for an hour or so about the pets *we'd* had when we were kids. We agreed that *we're* both 'dog people.' We *can't* imagine our lives without dogs. Her favorites are Pomeranians, and mine are golden retrievers." *That's* the kind of an entry *I'd* make in my journal. It *doesn't* mean much to anyone but me, and *that's* the way it should be.

I know that another *person's* diary would be different from mine and that most people *don't* even keep one. *I'm* glad that writing comes easily to me. I *don't* think *I'll* ever stop writing in my journal because it helps me believe in myself and value *others'* beliefs as well.

## RULE FOR DOUBLING A FINAL LETTER (P. 51)

### EXERCISE 1

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. batting  | 6. admitting |
| 2. quitting | 7. slapping  |
| 3. waiting  | 8. thinking  |
| 4. parking  | 9. tapping   |
| 5. skimming | 10. hitting  |

### EXERCISE 2

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. towing    | 6. ordering    |
| 2. ripping   | 7. profiting   |
| 3. peeling   | 8. screaming   |
| 4. referring | 9. slipping    |
| 5. investing | 10. predicting |

### EXERCISE 3

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. boxing    | 6. cashing   |
| 2. munching  | 7. beeping   |
| 3. rolling   | 8. talking   |
| 4. mopping   | 9. traveling |
| 5. flavoring | 10. playing  |

**EXERCISE 4**

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. painting  | 6. pressing   |
| 2. rowing    | 7. dealing    |
| 3. shivering | 8. knitting   |
| 4. defending | 9. blundering |
| 5. trimming  | 10. chugging  |

**EXERCISE 5**

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. shouting  | 6. mixing   |
| 2. deploying | 7. dripping |
| 3. referring | 8. sending  |
| 4. equaling  | 9. hemming  |
| 5. digging   | 10. taxing  |

**PROGRESS TEST (P. 54)**

1. B. They should *have* practiced more.
2. A. Kyle bought a *new* phone with his first paycheck.
3. A. My teacher *complimented* me on my attendance.
4. B. I feel *bad* whenever I hurt someone's feelings.
5. A. The tutors didn't know *where* the extra handouts were.
6. B. *It's* fun to shift gears.
7. A. Our new computer has *already* broken down several times.
8. B. I'm learning more from one of them *than* the other.
9. A. Eating a snack before an exam can have positive *effects*.
10. A. I always *accept* my best friend's advice.

**SENTENCE STRUCTURE****FINDING SUBJECTS AND VERBS (PP. 63–66)****EXERCISE 1**

1. My savings account recently reached a comfortable level.
2. With part of my savings, I bought a new computer.

3. I received a free printer with my computer.
4. Then I discovered the high prices of printer supplies.
5. I never buy heavy-duty paper for my printer.
6. Recycled paper costs less and comes in many different colors.
7. Sometimes I even print on both sides of the paper.
8. Toner cartridges for my printer are especially expensive.
9. Luckily, there is a postage-paid envelope inside each cartridge box for recycling.
10. Some stores also accept empty toner cartridges for a small rebate.

### EXERCISE 2

1. The summer heat causes many problems for people.
2. Food spoils more quickly in the summer.
3. Insects and other pests seek shelter inside.
4. There are power outages due to excessive use of air conditioners and fans.
5. In some areas, smog levels increase dramatically in the summer.
6. Schoolchildren suffer in overheated classrooms.
7. On the worst days, everyone searches for a swimming pool or drives to the beach.
8. Sleeping comfortably becomes impossible.
9. No activity seems worth the effort.
10. But the heat of summer fades in our minds at the first real break in the weather.

### EXERCISE 3

1. Katharine M. Rogers recently published her biography of L. Frank Baum.
2. Most people know Baum's work but not his name.
3. L. Frank Baum wrote *The Wonderful Wizard of Oz* and many other children's books and stories.
4. Of course, filmmakers used Baum's tale of the Wizard of Oz in the classic movie of the same name.
5. Baum's memorable character of the Scarecrow has an interesting story behind him.
6. During Baum's childhood, his father bought some farmland.
7. Baum saw scarecrows in the fields and found them fascinating.

8. Unfortunately, his keen imagination led to bad dreams about a scarecrow.
9. The scarecrow in his dreams ran after him but always fell into a heap of straw just in time.
10. As a writer, Baum brought the Scarecrow to life in his Oz stories and made him less of a nightmare and more of a friend.

#### EXERCISE 4

1. In 1940, four teenagers took a walk and discovered something marvelous.
2. They entered an underground cavern in Lascaux, France, and found vivid images of animals on its walls.
3. There were horses, deer, bulls, cats, and oxen.
4. The prehistoric artists also left tracings of their handprints on the walls.
5. Scientists dated the paintings and engravings at approximately 17,000 years old.
6. After its discovery, the Lascaux cave became a popular tourist attraction.
7. Twelve hundred people visited the site daily.
8. These visitors had a negative impact on the cave's prehistoric artwork.
9. They breathed carbon dioxide into the cave and increased its humidity.
10. French officials closed the Lascaux cave to the public in 1963.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. Movies and television programs often include real dogs as actors.
2. Disney's live-action 101 Dalmatians is just one example.
3. Snow Dogs, Eight Below, and The Shaggy Dog are three other dog-friendly films.
4. According to experts, dogs in films both help and hurt certain dog breeds.
5. For instance, sales and adoptions of Dalmatians rose dramatically after the Disney movie's popularity.
6. The other films caused the same effect for Siberian huskies and bearded collies.
7. However, these breeds are not good choices for everyone.
8. Many people become unhappy with them and put them up for adoption.
9. Disney now attaches warning labels to their DVDs of dog-related films.
10. The labels caution the public about the choice of dogs based on their movie roles.

**PARAGRAPH EXERCISE**

I was on the volleyball team in high school, so my high school gym was a special place for me. It was an ordinary gym with bleachers on both sides. There were basketball court lines on the floors and the school's mascot in the center. We stretched a net across the middle for our volleyball games. The pale wooden floors sparkled, sometimes with sweat and sometimes with tears. The gym had a distinct stuffy smell of grimy socks, stale potato chips, and sticky sodas. I liked the smell and remember it fondly. Songs from dances and screams and cheers from games echoed throughout the big old building. In the gym during those high school years, I felt a sense of privacy and community.

**LOCATING PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES (PP. 69–72)****EXERCISE 1**

1. My college counselor has an office (in the registration building).
2. I meet (with her) (at the beginning) (of each new school year).
3. She works (with me) (on my schedule).
4. We discuss my plans (for future semesters) (at the college).
5. She makes suggestions (about the best strategy) (for me) (at the time).
6. Sometimes I am lucky and find a space (in all) (of the right classes).
7. (At other times), I register late and end up (on waiting lists). [Note: *Up* is not used as a preposition in this sentence. Here, it's an adverb adding to the verb *end*.]
8. Classes (with prerequisites) fill more slowly (than those) (without prerequisites).
9. Luckily, now I meet the prerequisites (for a lot) (of important classes).
10. (Without the advice) (of my counselor), I definitely feel lost.

**EXERCISE 2**

1. Everyone worries (about identity theft).
2. Thieves search (for certain pieces) (of information).
3. These facts are names, addresses, dates (of birth), and social security numbers.
4. (With these facts), thieves attempt access (to people's accounts).

5. There are some new forms (of protection) (on the Internet).
6. One program checks the Web (for groupings) (of people's most valuable information).
7. The name (of the program) is Identity Angel.
8. Carnegie Mellon University (in Pittsburgh) created the program.
9. Identity Angel sends e-mail warnings (to vulnerable people).
10. It warns them (about possible identity theft).

### EXERCISE 3

1. One fact (about William Shakespeare and his work) always surprises people.
2. There are no copies (of his original manuscripts).
3. No museum or library has even one page (from a Shakespeare play) (in Shakespeare's own handwriting).
4. Museums and libraries have copies (of the First Folio) instead.
5. (After Shakespeare's death) (in 1616), actors (from his company) gathered the texts (of his plays) and published them (as one book), the First Folio, (in 1623).
6. They printed approximately 750 copies (at the time).
7. Currently, there are 230 known copies (of the First Folio) (in the world).
8. Many owners (of the Folio) remain anonymous (by choice).
9. One woman inherited her copy (of the Folio) (from a distant relative).
10. Another copy (of the First Folio) recently sold (for five million dollars).

### EXERCISE 4

1. Twiggy the Squirrel is a star (in the world) (of trained animals).
2. Twiggy performs (on a pair) (of tiny water skis) and delights crowds (at boat shows and other events).
3. (Like many other famous animal entertainers), the current Twiggy is not the original.
4. The Twiggy (of today) is fifth (in the line) (of Twiggy's).
5. Lou Ann Best is Twiggy's trainer and continues the work begun (by her husband Chuck) (during the 1970s). [*Begun* is a verbal.]
6. (In his time), Chuck Best convinced many types (of animals) to ride (on water skis). [*To ride* is a verbal.]

7. He had success (with everything) (from a dog) (to a frog).
8. But Twiggy the Squirrel was a hit (with crowds) (from the beginning).
9. All (of the Twiggy's) seemed happy (with their show-biz lifestyles).
10. (In fact), the Bests received four (of the Twiggy's) (from the Humane Society).

#### EXERCISE 5

1. (At 2 A.M.) (on the second Sunday) (in March), something happens (to nearly everyone) (in America): Daylight Saving Time.
2. But few people are awake (at two) (in the morning).
3. So we set the hands or digits (of our clocks) ahead one hour (on Saturday night) (in preparation) (for it).
4. And (before bed) (on the first Saturday) (in November), we turn them back again.
5. (For days) (after both events), I have trouble (with my sleep patterns and my mood).
6. (In spring), the feeling is one (of loss).
7. That Saturday-night sleep (into Sunday) is one hour shorter than usual.
8. But (in fall), I gain a false sense (of security) (about time).
9. That endless Sunday morning quickly melts (into the start) (of a hectic week) (like the other fifty-one) (in the year).
10. All (of this upheaval) is due (to the Uniform Time Act) (of 1966).

#### PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

A whole collection (of clay toys) was discovered (during the nineteenth century) (in Strasbourgh), (in the workshop) (of a thirteenth-century potter). (Since then), we know more (about medieval children's games): bird-shaped whistles, miniature tiles and pitchers, tiny moneyboxes, little dolls, and diminutive horses (with riders) (on their backs). Children fought battles (with wooden swords), competed (in play tournaments), played games (with balls and wooden sticks) (in a remote precursor) (to modern field hockey).

(In families) (with more means), there were "educational toys," such as an alphabet wheel (in gesso) (from the fourteenth century) or a covered pewter cup decorated (with the entire alphabet). The letter A, the first the child would pronounce, is (on the knob). We find out (about the instruction) (of children) primarily (from images) (of family life).

## UNDERSTANDING DEPENDENT CLAUSES (PP. 76–79)

### EXERCISE 1

1. Edgar and Nina Otto, who live in Florida, were the winning bidders in an unusual auction in 2008.
2. Whoever placed the highest bid won the opportunity of a lifetime: a chance to clone their dog. [Note: The dependent clause acts as the subject of the sentence.]
3. The company that held the auction and provided the service was BioArts International.
4. The Ottos wanted to clone Sir Lancelot, a yellow Labrador that died in 2008.
5. The price that they paid exceeded \$150,000.
6. Once the auction ended, the scientists at BioArts went to work.
7. They used the DNA that the Ottos saved from Sir Lancelot to produce a genetic match.
8. The complex process, which took place in South Korea, yielded an adorable puppy.
9. The puppy looked so much like Sir Lancelot that the company named him Encore Lancelot, Lancey for short.
10. At the first meeting with their new dog in January of 2009, the Ottos were overjoyed that Lancey walked with crossed feet, just like Sir Lancelot.

### EXERCISE 2

1. When I was on vacation in New York City, I loved the look of the Empire State Building at night.
2. I thought that the colored lights at the top of this landmark were just decorative.
3. I did not know that their patterns also have meaning.
4. While I waited at the airport, I read a pamphlet about the patterns.
5. Some of the light combinations reveal connections that are obvious.
6. For instance, if the occasion is St. Patrick's Day, the top of the building glows with green lights.
7. When the holiday involves a celebration of America, the three levels of lights shine red, white, and blue.

8. There are other combinations that are less well known.
9. Red-black-green is a pattern that signals Martin Luther King, Jr. Day.
10. Whenever I visit the city again, I'll know the meanings of the lights on the Empire State Building.

**EXERCISE 3**

1. When people shop for high-price items, they often think too much.
2. A study at the University of Amsterdam yielded results that surprised scientists.
3. If buyers thought only a little bit beforehand, they remained happy with their purchase later.
4. When they consciously considered many details about a product, they were not as satisfied with it afterward.
5. The products that researchers used in the experiments were cars and furniture.
6. For the car-buying study, they tested eighty people who were all college students.
7. The cars had many positive and negative attributes for the subjects to consider when they made their choices.
8. The subjects who took the least amount of time chose the best cars.
9. Likewise, a survey of furniture shoppers showed that quick decisions led to satisfied customers.
10. Apparently, shoppers who trust their instincts make the best decisions.

**EXERCISE 4**

1. Did you know that July is National Cell Phone Courtesy Month?
2. There are few cell phone users who are courteous in public.
3. In fact, courtesy is almost impossible when someone uses a cell phone around others.

4. People who have cell phones set their ring tones on high and have loud conversations.
5. Even if they are in stores, restaurants, or libraries, cell phone users answer most of their calls.
6. The question remains about how cell phone users can be more courteous.
7. One solution is a new type of phone booth that has no phone in it.
8. It is a structure that has a cylindrical shape and a metal exterior.
9. There is a door that callers use for privacy.
10. The cell phone booth is an old-fashioned idea that makes a lot of sense.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. I just read an article with a list of “What Doctors Wish [that] You Knew.”
2. One fact is that red and blue fruits are the healthiest.
3. Patients who have doctor's appointments after lunchtime spend less time in the waiting room.
4. Drivers who apply more sunscreen to their left sides get less skin cancer.
5. People who take ten deep breaths in the morning and evening feel less stress.
6. A clock that is visible from the bed makes insomnia worse.
7. People often suffer from weekend headaches because they get up too late.
8. They withdraw from caffeine by skipping the coffee that they usually drink on workdays.
9. Doctors suggest that people maintain weekday hours on weekends.
10. I am glad that I found this list.

**PARAGRAPH EXERCISE**

Today experts disagree over the impact of television on our lives. Some argue that increased crime is a direct outcome of television since programs show crime as an everyday event and since advertisements make people aware of what they don't have. Critics also maintain that television stimulates aggressive behavior, reinforces ethnic stereotyping, and leads to a decrease in activity and creativity. Proponents of television counter [when they cite] increased awareness in world events, improved verbal abilities, and greater curiosity as benefits of television viewing.

**CORRECTING FRAGMENTS (PP. 82–86)****EXERCISE 1**

Changes used to turn the fragments into sentences are *italicized*.

1. The sentence is correct.
2. Many people *want* to eat lighter meals and waste less food.
3. Some recent changes in the types of food at restaurants *are encouraging*.
4. *They include* healthier menu options for everyone.
5. *There are* options for vegetarians and people on low-carb diets.
6. The sentence is correct.
7. Children's meals *can come* with fruit instead of fries.
8. Milk and water *are* available instead of soda.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. All of these changes *represent* positive steps toward a healthier, leaner lifestyle.

**EXERCISE 2**

Changes used to turn the fragments into sentences are *italicized*.

1. Correct
2. *The article said that* bananas are in danger of extinction in the near future.

3. *The danger comes from* a crop disease that infects the banana plants' leaves.
4. Correct
5. Correct
6. Some banana experts *are warning* about no more bananas to eat.
7. *That would mean* no banana cream pies, banana splits, banana muffins, or banana bread.
8. Correct
9. Correct
10. Chocolate and coffee *have been threatened by* similar scares in the past.

### EXERCISE 3

Answers may vary, but here are some possible revisions.

1. A worker at the Smithsonian discovered an important historical object on a shelf in one of the museum's storage rooms.
2. Made of cardboard and covered with short, smooth fur, it was a tall black top hat.
3. The hat didn't look like anything special—more like an old costume or prop.
4. It was special, however, having been worn by Abraham Lincoln on the night of his assassination.
5. Once found and identified, Lincoln's hat traveled with the 150th anniversary exhibition, called "America's Smithsonian."
6. For such a priceless object to be able to travel around the country safely, experts needed to build a unique display case for Lincoln's top hat.
7. The design allowed visitors to view the famous stovepipe hat without damaging it with their breath or hands.
8. The hat traveled in a sealed box that was designed against even earthquakes.
9. Keeping the hat earthquake-proof was an important concern because it would be on display in California for part of the time.
10. Among the millions of objects in the archives of the Smithsonian, President Lincoln's hat is one of the most impressive.

### EXERCISE 4

Answers may vary, but here are some possible revisions.

1. When Nathan King turned twelve, he had a heart-stopping experience.
2. Nathan was tossing a football against his bedroom wall, which made the ball ricochet and land on his bed.

3. In a diving motion, Nathan fell on his bed to catch the ball as it landed.
4. After he caught the ball, Nathan felt a strange sensation in his chest.
5. To his surprise, he looked down and saw the eraser end of a no. 2 pencil that had pierced his chest and entered his heart.
6. Nathan immediately shouted for his mother, who luckily was in the house at the time.
7. Because Nathan's mom is a nurse, she knew not to remove the pencil.
8. If she had pulled the pencil out of her son's chest, he would have died.
9. After Nathan was taken to a hospital equipped for open-heart surgery, he had the pencil carefully removed.
10. Fate may be partly responsible for Nathan's happy birthday story since it turned out to be his heart surgeon's birthday too.

#### EXERCISE 5

Answers may vary, but here are some possible revisions. (Changes and additions are in *italics*.)

1. One of the people sitting next to me on the train *sneezed four times in a row*.
2. Before intermission, the movie seemed endless.
3. Before the paint was dry in the classrooms, *the new semester began*.
4. The judge's question and the answer it received *surprised everyone*.
5. Because there were fewer students in the program this year, *it ran smoothly*.
6. *His speech lasted* for over an hour.
7. Whenever the teacher reminds us about the midterm exam, *we get nervous*.
8. If we move to Kentucky and stay for two years, *we will save money*.
9. *Please notify us* as soon as the order form reaches the warehouse.
10. Buildings with odd shapes always interest me.

#### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Answers may vary, but here are some possible revisions. (Changes are in *italics*.)

I love fireworks shows. *They can be* backyard displays or huge Fourth of July events. *The whole sky lights up* with color and booms with noise. In fact, I have a dream to become a fireworks expert. If I could take a class in pyrotechnics right now, I would. Instead, I have to take general education *classes like English, math, and psychology*. Maybe an appointment with a career counselor would be a good idea. *The counselor could help me find the right school—one with a training program* in fireworks preparation.

## CORRECTING RUN-ON SENTENCES (PP. 89–93)

### EXERCISE 1

1. I read an essay last night, but I can't remember its title.
2. It was about a writer who lived with his aunt, and she had an intense fear of lightning.
3. At first, the writer didn't share his aunt's fear; he thought it was unfounded.
4. He watched her take extreme precautions against lightning strikes. For instance, she often sat on one raincoat and covered her head with another to avoid contact with the ground or air.
5. The sentence is correct.
6. One common household object was the source of her worst lightning-based fears, and that was the telephone.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. She also thought that lightning was attracted to her car, so she stopped it in the middle of the road whenever a storm approached.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. The sentence is correct.

### EXERCISE 2

Your answers may differ depending on how you chose to separate the two clauses.

1. I just read an article about prehistoric rodents, and I was surprised by their size.
2. Scientists recently discovered the remains of a rat-like creature called *Phoberomys*; it was as big as a buffalo.
3. *Phoberomys* sat back on its large rear feet and fed itself with its smaller front feet in just the way rats and mice do now.
4. This supersized rodent lived in South America, but luckily that was nearly ten million years ago.
5. At that time, South America was a separate continent; it had no cows or horses to graze on its open land.
6. South America and North America were separated by the sea, so there were also no large cats around to hunt and kill other large animals.
7. Scientists believe that *Phoberomys* thrived and grew large because of the lack of predators and competitors for food.

8. The *Phoberomys*' carefree lifestyle eventually disappeared, for the watery separation between North and South America slowly became a land route.
9. The big carnivores of North America could travel down the new land route, and the big rodents were defenseless against them.
10. The rodents who survived were the smaller ones who could escape underground, and that is the reason we have no buffalo-sized rats today.

### EXERCISE 3

Your answers may differ since various words can be used to begin dependent clauses.

1. Pablo Wendel is a German student of art who feels a special connection with a particular group of ancient sculptures.
2. When Pablo acted on this feeling in September of 2006, he won his “fifteen minutes of fame.”
3. The sentence is correct.
4. The sentence is correct.
5. He made a special clay-covered costume that was complete with armor and a helmet.
6. Pablo took this outfit and a pedestal with him to the museum, which is located in Xian, China.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. The sentence is correct.
9. Pablo, in disguise, stood among his fellow “soldiers” and didn’t move until eventually someone spotted him.
10. Although the museum guards confiscated Pablo’s clay costume, they let him go with just a warning.

### EXERCISE 4

Your answers may differ since various words can be used to begin dependent clauses.

1. Our town has recently installed a new rapid transit system that uses trains instead of only buses.
2. The new metro train tracks follow the same old route that freight trains used to run on behind the buildings in town.
3. I might try this new transportation method since the parking on campus has been getting worse every semester.

4. Because the stations are near my house and school, I would have to walk only a few blocks each day.
5. Students who don't live near the train stations would have to take a bus to the train.
6. Whereas the old buses are bulky and ugly, the new trains are sleek and attractive.
7. Although the new trains seem to be inspiring many people to be more conscious of their driving habits, some people will never change.
8. I would gladly give up my car if the convenience matched the benefits.
9. The city has plans for additional routes that will bring more commuters in from out of town.
10. I am glad that my town is making progress.

#### EXERCISE 5

Your answers may differ depending on how you chose to separate the clauses.

1. White buffalos are very rare, and they are extremely important in Native American folklore.
2. Many American Indian tribes feel a strong attachment to white buffalos because they are viewed as omens of peace and prosperity.
3. One farm in Wisconsin is famous as a source of white buffalos. Three of them have been born on this farm since 1994.
4. The owners of the farm are Valerie and Dave Heider, and they are as surprised as anyone about the unusual births.
5. The Heiders' first white buffalo was a female calf who was named Miracle.
6. After Miracle became a local attraction, visitors to the Heider farm raised tourism in the area by twenty-two percent in 1995.
7. A second white calf was born on the farm in 1996; however, it died after a few days.
8. Miracle survived until 2004; she lived for ten years.
9. In September of 2006, the Heider farm yielded a third white buffalo calf, but it was a boy.
10. The odds against one white buffalo being born are high; the odds against three being born in the same place are astronomical.

## REVIEW OF FRAGMENTS AND RUN-ON SENTENCES (P. 94)

Your revisions may differ depending on how you chose to correct the errors.

Sometimes I feel like an egg—always sitting in rows. In classrooms, the chairs are arranged in rows, and at the movies the seats are connected into rows. Why can't chairs be scattered around randomly? In my classes, I usually choose a seat in the back row; that way I have a view of the whole room. Luckily, I have good eyesight because the chalkboard or whiteboard can be hard to read at that distance. In movie theaters, the most distracting problem can come from the people behind me. I don't mind people making noise or talking, but I can't stand people kicking my chair. It totally ruins my concentration. Therefore, I try to sit in the back row of the theater whenever possible.

## IDENTIFYING VERB PHRASES (PP. 96–99)

### EXERCISE 1

1. Scientists have found prehistoric musical instruments in various parts of the world.
2. But the ancient flute that was discovered in southwest Germany in 2009 may be the oldest playable instrument on earth.
3. The 35,000-year-old flute was made from the wing bone of a vulture.
4. The bone was hollowed out and pierced with five holes that produce the notes.
5. Two notches were carved at one end of the flute to form a kind of mouthpiece.
6. This ancient flute was probably played in the vertical position.
7. Other flutes that were made of were ivory were found at the same time and in the same location.
8. People who have studied prehistoric instruments are hoping to learn more about the culture that produced them.
9. Visitors to various Web sites can listen to music from the world's oldest working flute.
10. Listeners will be taken back to 33,000 years B.C.E.

### EXERCISE 2

1. Have you ever felt a craving for art?
2. Have you said to yourself, "I need a new painting, or I will lose my mind"?
3. If you do find yourself in this situation, you can get instant satisfaction.

4. I am referring to Art-o-Mat machines, of course.
5. These vending machines dispense small pieces of modern art.
6. You insert five dollars, pull a knob on a refurbished cigarette dispenser, and out comes an original art piece.
7. The artists themselves get fifty percent of the selling price.
8. Art-o-Mat machines can be found at locations across the country.
9. Art-o-Mats are currently dispensing tiny paintings, photographs, and sculptures in twenty-eight states and in Canada and Austria.
10. The machines have sold the works of hundreds of contemporary artists.

### EXERCISE 3

1. I am always working on my vocabulary.
2. *Lie* and *lay* can be tricky verbs to use sometimes.
3. They mean “rest” and “put,” in that order.
4. Lately, I have been practicing with these two verbs.
5. I know that a sunken ship lies at the bottom of the ocean.
6. The *Titanic*, for example, has lain there for over ninety years.
7. When I left for school, my books were lying all over my desk.
8. A bricklayer is a person who lays bricks to form walls and walkways.
9. Last week, we laid a new foundation for the garage.
10. The contractors will be laying our new concrete driveway on Friday.

### EXERCISE 4

1. I have been reading a series of books that were written by Erin McHugh.
2. These books are filled with facts about important people, places, events, and objects throughout history.
3. The series is called *The 5 W's*.
4. McHugh has included five separate books in the series: *Who?*, *What?*, *Where?*, *When?*, and *Why?*.
5. In *Who?*, McHugh offers fun tidbits and biographical information about influential people.
6. McHugh's discussion of the faces on U.S. money is filled with surprising information.

7. All but three of the people with their pictures on U.S. bills have been presidents of the United States.
8. Alexander Hamilton and Benjamin Franklin are still shown on the ten-dollar bill and the hundred-dollar bill, respectively.
9. The U.S. Treasury does not print \$10,000 bills anymore.
10. When it did print them, these big bills pictured the inventor of the nation's banking system, Salmon P. Chase.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. There have been several power outages in our neighborhood recently.
2. Last week when I was writing an essay on my computer, the power went off.
3. I had not saved my work, and I lost the last few sentences that I had written.
4. I did not enjoy the process of remembering those sentences.
5. Sometimes power outages can be fun.
6. If my whole family is at home, we light the candles on our two big candelabras and put them in the middle of the dining room table.
7. The room starts to look like the set of an old horror movie.
8. Then someone goes to the hall closet and grabs a board game to play.
9. On these special occasions, all of us can forget about school or work problems and just enjoy ourselves.
10. Maybe we should plan to spend evenings like this more often.

#### REVIEW EXERCISE (P. 99)

My brain feels (like a computer's central processing unit). Information is continually pumping (into its circuits). I organize the data, format it (to my individual preferences), and lay it out (in my own style). As I endlessly sculpt existing formulas, they become something (of my own). When I need a solution (to a

problem), I access the data that I have gathered (from my whole existence), even my preprogrammed DNA.

Since I am a student, teachers require that I supply them (with specific information) (in various formats). When they assign an essay, I produce several paragraphs. If they need a summary, I scan the text, find its main ideas, and put them briefly (into my own words). I know that I can accomplish whatever the teachers ask so that I can obtain a degree and continue processing ideas to make a living.

I compare my brain (to a processor) because right now I feel that I must work (like one). As I go further (into my education), my processor will be continually updated. And (with any luck), I will end up (with real, not artificial, intelligence).

## USING STANDARD ENGLISH VERBS (PP. 102–105)

### EXERCISE 1

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. end, ended   | 6. shop, shopped |
| 2. do, did      | 7. are, were     |
| 3. am, was      | 8. pick, picked  |
| 4. votes, voted | 9. do, did       |
| 5. have, had    | 10. has, had     |

### EXERCISE 2

- |                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. are, were    | 6. stuffs, stuffed |
| 2. does, did    | 7. are, were       |
| 3. has, had     | 8. do, did         |
| 4. tags, tagged | 9. dance, danced   |
| 5. have, had    | 10. are, were      |

**EXERCISE 3**

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. changed, want            | 6. observed, had            |
| 2. had                      | 7. watched, cared, followed |
| 3. enrolled, were, expected | 8. had                      |
| 4. were, were               | 9. imagined, had            |
| 5. did, were, does          | 10. needs, are, am          |

**EXERCISE 4**

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. have          | 6. is, wins      |
| 2. play          | 7. am, is, am    |
| 3. plays         | 8. remind        |
| 4. play          | 9. follows       |
| 5. practices, do | 10. have, am, is |

**EXERCISE 5**

1. Last semester, my drawing teacher *banded* us an assignment.
2. The sentence is correct.
3. *We had* to draw in the other half of the picture.
4. My picture *showed* a woman sitting against the bottom of a tree trunk.
5. Her shoulders, hat, and umbrella *were* only partly there.
6. I tried to imagine what the missing parts *looked* like.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. Therefore, I *started* with the tree, the sky, and the ground.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. I *received* an “A” grade for my drawing.

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

Every day, as we arrive on campus and walk to our classrooms, we see things that ~~needs~~ *need* to be fixed. Many of them cause us only a little bit of trouble, so we ~~forgets~~ *forget* them until we face them again. Every morning, there is a long line of students in their cars waiting to enter the parking lots because the lights at all of the corners ~~is~~ *are* not timed properly. The lights from the main boulevard change too slowly, and that ~~allow~~ *allows* too many cars to stack up on the side streets. Students who walk to school ~~is~~ *are* affected, too. Many drivers don't watch where they ~~is~~ *are* going and almost run over pedestrians who ~~is~~ *are* walking in the driveways.

## USING REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS (PP. 110–114)

### EXERCISE 1

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. live   | 6. lives   |
| 2. lived  | 7. live    |
| 3. live   | 8. living  |
| 4. living | 9. live    |
| 5. lived  | 10. living |

### EXERCISE 2

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. got, gets      | 6. leave, left  |
| 2. gave, given    | 7. wave, waves  |
| 3. am, is         | 8. knows, know  |
| 4. thought, think | 9. does, do     |
| 5. grown, grow    | 10. was, be, am |

### EXERCISE 3

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. took, supposed     | 6. felt, knew, be       |
| 2. was, go            | 7. tried, went (or got) |
| 3. called, left, feel | 8. been, undo           |
| 4. imagined, was      | 9. wish, take           |
| 5. buying, drove, saw | 10. did, was            |

### EXERCISE 4

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. use, have         | 6. trusts, is       |
| 2. do, speak, dials  | 7. imagine, dialing |
| 3. are, are          | 8. asking, told, is |
| 4. is, like, started | 9. looked, smiled   |
| 5. does, wants       | 10. has             |

### EXERCISE 5

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. sitting, saw            | 6. waiting, cut               |
| 2. was, appeared           | 7. called, watched, recognize |
| 3. flipped, turned, looked | 8. look, figured, was         |
| 4. was, wore, thought, was | 9. got, chatted, was          |
| 5. passed, seemed          | 10. come, left                |

**PROGRESS TEST (P. 115)**

1. B. wrong word (I should *have* done all my research sooner.)
2. B. wrong word/possessive (We were surprised that it made it to *its* destination.)
3. A. incorrect verb form (We were *supposed* to meet in the library.)
4. B. wrong word/contraction (*They're* going to exciting locations for spring break. . . .)
5. A. run-on sentence (I was the first student to finish the quiz, but I had to wait. . . .)
6. B. fragment (*They* often *cost* much less than the ones in stores.)
7. B. incorrect verb form (I *asked* the teacher if I could get extra credit. . . .)
8. A. wrong word (We've *already* taken three tests in my math class.)
9. B. run-on sentence (The brakes didn't work fast enough, so the bus hopped. . . .)
10. A. fragment (I don't like the taste of coconut or pineapple. Or combine A. and B.)

**MAINTAINING SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT (PP. 118–122)****EXERCISE 1**

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. is, has, portray    | 6. have              |
| 2. is, are             | 7. gets, has, is, is |
| 3. include, spark, are | 8. signifies, are    |
| 4. give                | 9. is, make          |
| 5. rank                | 10. has              |

**EXERCISE 2**

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. work            | 6. get, ask, are |
| 2. are             | 7. is, do        |
| 3. have, know      | 8. focus         |
| 4. are             | 9. work          |
| 5. gets, separates | 10. is, aren't   |

**EXERCISE 3**

- |                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. explains, seem, happen | 3. begin, react |
| 2. feels, don't           | 4. are, have    |

5. is, sense  
 6. don't, get  
 7. isn't  
 8. do  
 9. have, do, is  
 10. look, run, has, do

**EXERCISE 4**

1. have  
 2. were  
 3. was  
 4. is  
 5. allows  
 6. travels  
 7. breaks, melts, seals  
 8. are  
 9. realize  
 10. is, are

**EXERCISE 5**

1. gives  
 2. sounds, begins, is  
 3. connects  
 4. says, means  
 5. forecasts  
 6. are, mean  
 7. are, foretell  
 8. means  
 9. are  
 10. seem

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

Unfortunately, tension between members of the public ~~are~~ *is* common these days. When two people at a movie theater ~~irritates~~ *irritate* each other or have a disagreement, the whole audience ~~suffer~~ *suffers*. Everyone who is sitting around the troublemakers ~~want~~ *wants* to move immediately to another section. However, if anyone ~~get~~ *gets* up to sit somewhere else, then everyone else ~~start~~ *starts* to get nervous. So most people just ~~waits~~ *wait* until one of two fighting people ~~calm~~ *calms* down. After that, the members of the audience ~~forgets~~ *forget* about the disturbance and enjoy the rest of the movie. The same pattern ~~repeat~~ *repeats* itself in stadiums and ballparks, too.

**AVOIDING SHIFTS IN TIME (PP. 124–125)**

1. The paragraph is correct.  
 2. Back in the early 1900s, Sears Roebuck sold houses through the mail. The houses *were* listed along with the rest of the products in Sears' famous catalog. The house kits arrived in thousands of pieces, and people *could* put them together themselves. Or they *got* a builder to help them. In 1919, one company, Standard Oil, *placed* an order for an entire town's worth of houses as shelter for their employees. The house kits even included the paint that the homeowners *used* to paint the houses when they *were* finished. The ability to order a whole house from the Sears catalog ended in 1940, but thousands of them are still being lived in by people across America.

3. The last time I took my car in for a scheduled service, I noticed a few problems when I *picked* it up. I *checked* the oil dipstick, and it *had* really dark oil still on it. Also, there was a screwdriver balancing on my air-filter cover. I *couldn't* believe it when I *saw* it, but as soon as I showed the tool to the service manager, he *called* the mechanic over to take my car back to the service area. After another hour, my car *was* ready, the dipstick *had* clean oil on it, and the service manager cleared the bill so that I didn't have to pay anything.

## RECOGNIZING VERBAL PHRASES (PP. 128–132)

### EXERCISE 1

1. The Lunar Republic Society is an international company that has taken on the task of [naming parts of our Moon].
2. After Michael Jackson's death in 2009, the society wanted [to pay tribute to the inventor of the "moonwalk" in a special way].
3. It decided [to name one of the Moon's craters after him].
4. Coincidentally, the Moon already had a Jackson crater, [commemorating an astronomer from Scotland] [named John Jackson].
5. Therefore, Lunar Republic officials needed [to use the King of Pop's full name, Michael Joseph Jackson, as the name for his crater].
6. Crater Michael Joseph Jackson used [to be called Posidonius J, in honor of an ancient Greek intellectual].
7. Now an ordinary home telescope is all one needs [to see Michael Jackson's newly [named] crater].
8. Other famous people [to have craters named after them by the society] are Leonardo da Vinci and Christopher Columbus.
9. Michael Jackson's fascination with the Moon led him [to buy "property" there] while he was alive.
10. Jackson owned over a thousand acres of land on the Moon and dreamed of [performing his signature moonwalk there someday].

### EXERCISE 2

1. Philippe Halsman was a well-[known] portrait photographer [working in the twentieth century].
2. Halsman's photographs were good enough [to appear on the cover of *Life* magazine 101 times].

3. [Capturing the essence of famous people on film] was Halsman's specialty.
4. The list of celebrities that Halsman was asked [to photograph] included Marilyn Monroe, Albert Einstein, and Winston Churchill.
5. Halsman found that [taking good pictures of such powerful people was not easy].
6. He often tried [to find new ways] [to loosen them up].
7. In 1952, Halsman asked one of his elite clients [to jump in the air] while [being photographed].
8. Halsman loved the results, and he started a series of [jumping] pictures.
9. Who doesn't like [to see famous people like Richard Nixon] [jumping up like a little boy] in a photograph?
10. Halsman gathered the best of the [jumping] photographs in a book [called *Philippe Halsman's Jump Book*].

### EXERCISE 3

1. [To paraphrase Mark Twain], [golfing] is just a way [to ruin a good walk].
2. In fact, [becoming a golfer] can be dangerous.
3. Golf professionals commonly suffer a couple of injuries per year [resulting from long hours] of [practicing their swings].
4. Amateur golfers tend [to injure themselves] much more often.
5. Most injuries come from the [twisting], [squatting], and [bending] [involved in [golfing]].
6. And [moving the heavy bags of clubs] from cars to carts can wrench the backs of potential golfers before they even begin [to play].
7. Of course, there are the unfortunate incidents of people on golf courses [being struck by lightning].
8. But some of the sources of golfers' ailments may be [surprising].
9. [Cleaning the dirt and debris off the golf balls] by [licking them], for instance, may have serious repercussions.
10. After [swallowing the chemicals] [sprayed on the turf] of the golf course, players can develop liver problems.

### EXERCISE 4

1. I like [to listen to music at home].
2. [Playing my favorite songs out loud through my speakers] is my main way [to relax].

3. I have tried [using headphones], but they hurt my ears.
4. I also don't like [to feel disconnected from everyone else].
5. [Filling my house with well-chosen tunes] allows me [to maintain my identity].
6. We all use choices of music, fashion, and art [to define ourselves].
7. Some people wear T-shirts [showing pictures or slogans that they like].
8. I want everyone [to hear the music that I like].
9. My neighbors have not complained about my habit of [listening to music] without [using headphones].
10. I try [to be considerate of them] and turn the volume down at 10:00 every night.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. Why do [plumbing] emergencies always happen on the weekends?
2. Toilets, sinks, and tubs seem [to know when plumbers' rates go up].
3. Some emergencies—a slow-[draining] sink, for instance—can be tolerated for a couple of days.
4. And a [dripping] shower faucet may cause annoyance, but not panic.
5. However, a [backed]-up sewer pipe definitely can't wait until Monday.
6. No one wants [to see that water [rising] and [overflowing] the rim of the bowl].
7. At that point, the only question is which “rooter” service [to call].
8. [Finding the main drainage line] often takes more time than [clearing it].
9. Once the plumber has finished [fixing the problem], he or she usually eyes future potential disasters and offers [to prevent them with even more work].
10. After [getting the final bill], I hope that my children will grow up [to be not doctors but plumbers].

#### PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

### Christo and Jeanne-Claude (1935-, 1935-)

It started as an obsession with [wrapping]. The Bulgarian-[born] artist Christo spent years [swaddling bicycles, trees, storefronts, and women friends] before [moving on] [to wrap a section of the Roman Wall, part of the Australian

coastline, and eventually all twelve arches, plus the parapets, sidewalks, street-lamps, vertical embankment, and esplanade, of Paris' Pont Neuf]. And yes, together they did wrap the Reichstag. But Christo and his wife/manager/collaborator Jeanne-Claude are quick [to insist] that [wrappings] form only a small percentage of their total oeuvre. There were, for instance, those twenty-four and a half miles of white nylon, eighteen feet high, they hung from a steel cable north of San Francisco; the eleven islands in Biscayne Bay, Florida, they "surrounded"—not wrapped, mind you—with pink polypropylene fabric; and the 3,100 enormous blue and yellow "umbrellas" they erected in two [corresponding] valleys in California and Japan. Not [to mention] their 2005 blockbuster, "The Gates," 7,503 sixteen-foot-tall saffron panels they suspended, to the delight of almost everybody, over twenty-three miles of footpaths in New York's Central Park.

So, what's their point? Rest assured, you're not the first [to ask]. And no one is more eager [to tell you] than the artist formerly [known] as Christo (now, officially, "Christo and Jeanne-Claude") whose art is nothing if not Open to the Public. In fact, [taking art public]—that is, [taking it away from the Uptown Museum Gallery Complex] by [making it too big] [to fit in studios, museums, or galleries]—was part of the original idea. Christo and Jeanne-Claude will tell you that their point is, literally, [to rock your world.] By temporarily [disrupting one part of an environment], they hope [to get you] [to "perceive the whole environment with new eyes and a new consciousness."]

### SENTENCE WRITING

Your sentences may vary, but make sure that your verbals are not actually the main verbs of your clauses. You should be able to double underline your real verbs, as we have done here.

1. [Thinking of a good title] takes time.
2. We spent the morning [folding laundry].
3. I enjoy [skiing in spring] even though the snow is better in winter.
4. I was taught that [marking up a book] is wrong.

5. I would love [to take you to school].
6. I need [to get a good grade on the next quiz].
7. Yesterday, I started [to paste my old photos in a scrapbook].
8. He doesn't have the desire [to exercise regularly].
9. The school canceled the [planned] parking lot next to the library.
10. [Given the opportunity], my dog will escape from our yard.

## CORRECTING MISPLACED OR DANGLING MODIFIERS (PP. 134–136)

Answers may vary. Corrections are in *italics*.

### EXERCISE 1

1. My family prefers fish instead of meat *in tacos*.
2. After just making it to the station on time, *we found that* our train had departed early.
3. Loaded with garlic, *the lasagna we had at a new restaurant last night was the best we have ever tasted*.
4. I always set my computer to sleep *automatically* whenever I leave it unattended.
5. Everyone loves to receive gifts, *even when they are given by strangers*.
6. My brother found a twenty-dollar bill *when he was riding on the bus*.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. *Leaning against the whiteboard*, the teacher read us an essay about crows.
9. Designing my home page last night, *I was unable to finish my schoolwork*.
10. *History textbooks inform students* about influential people who may not be famous for their contributions.

### EXERCISE 2

1. Everyone enjoys eating corndogs *smearred with mustard or ketchup*.
2. *Before we asked for an extension*, the teacher told us that we had a few extra days to finish our papers.
3. *Looking through their binoculars*, they spotted a hawk and its babies.
4. The sentence is correct.
5. I called the doctor *while I was on the roof*.
6. The sentence is correct.

7. *After it screeched to a stop*, I got on the bus and took my seat among the rest of the passengers.
8. I can't eat a hamburger *without pickles*.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. We had to write a paragraph *in our notebooks, and the topic was the weather*.

### EXERCISE 3

1. The kids at the party still enjoyed the cake *even though it was baked in an odd-shaped pan*.
2. The sentence is correct.
3. I looked at the baked potato, *loaded with butter and sour cream*, and wondered how I would eat it because I am allergic to dairy products.
4. The sentence is correct.
5. *Unless someone has natural talent*, the violin is almost impossible to learn.
6. *As I was riding on a bus into town*, the sunshine felt warm on my arm.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. I have given up on that comedian *who tells one bad joke after another*.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. I loved *my friends' presents tied with pretty bows*.

### EXERCISE 4

1. The sentence is correct.
2. Filled with the perfect amount of air, *the new tires made my car handle really well on the road*.
3. After three weeks of waiting, *I received the textbooks that I bought online. I got them just in time for the semester to begin*.
4. He cooked all of his meals *while he was wearing* his slippers.
5. The sentence is correct.
6. *As we drove past the park*, a ball bounced into the street between two parked cars.
7. *I didn't even want the tiny pieces of that torn quiz paper near me*.
8. The sentence is correct.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. We saw tons of ants walking in the cracks of the sidewalk.

**EXERCISE 5**

1. *Because I felt the thrill of a day at the amusement park*, my blisters didn't bother me.
2. My friends and I saw the new tearjerker, *which is full of touching scenes*.
3. The sentence is correct.
4. Practicing for an hour a day, *she improved her piano playing*.
5. The sentence is correct.
6. *While she was sitting on a bench all day*, an idea came to her.
7. They discovered a new outlet mall *on the road to their cousins' house*.
8. *From his parents*, he felt the pressure of trying to get a good job.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. The sentence is correct.

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

Corrections are *italicized*. Yours may differ slightly.

*As I walked into my neighborhood polling place during the last election, a volunteer greeted me and checked my name and address. Because it was misspelled slightly on their printout, the volunteer couldn't find my name at first. I pointed to what I thought was my name. At least upside down, it looked like mine. But actually, it was another person's name. Once the printout was turned toward me, I could see it more clearly. My name was there, but it had an extra letter stuck on the end of it. With a polite smile, the volunteer handed me a change-of-name form. I filled it out and punched my ballot. Stuck on my wall at home, my voting receipt reminds me to check my name carefully when the next election comes around.*

**FOLLOWING SENTENCE PATTERNS (PP. 139–143)****EXERCISE 1**

1. (In the past), bells <sup>S</sup> were <sup>LV</sup> very useful. <sup>Desc</sup>
2. Farmers <sup>S</sup> protected <sup>AV</sup> their animals (with bells). <sup>Obj</sup>
3. The movement <sup>S</sup> (of an animal) triggered <sup>AV</sup> the sound (of its bell). <sup>Obj</sup>
4. The sound <sup>S</sup> (of a particular bell) could signal <sup>AV</sup> the location (of a lost cow, cat, or goat). <sup>Obj</sup>

5. Early American sleighs and wagons also used bells (as safety equipment).  
S S AV Obj
6. People (on country roads) walked around (with earmuffs or heavy hats) on (in winter).  
S AV
7. Sleighs and their horses did not make very loud sounds (on the snow).  
S S AV Obj
8. Therefore, people added bells (to the sleighs and horses).  
S AV Obj
9. Pedestrians moved out (of the way) (upon [hearing the bells]). Note: “Hearing the bells” is a verbal phrase within the prepositional phrase.  
S AV
10. (Without bells), life (in early America) would have been quieter and more dangerous.  
S LV Desc Desc

## EXERCISE 2

1. Erasto Mpemba is a big name (in science).  
S LV Desc
2. (In the early 1960s), he observed an odd phenomenon.  
S AV Obj
3. (At the time), he was a high school student (in Tanzania).  
S LV Desc
4. Mpemba made ice cream (for a school project).  
S AV Obj
5. He boiled the milk and mixed it (with the other ingredients).  
S AV Obj AV Obj
6. Then he put the hot—not cold—mixture directly (into the freezer).  
S AV Obj
7. The hot mixture froze faster.  
S AV
8. Mpemba told his teachers and fellow students (about his discovery).  
S AV Obj Obj
9. They laughed (at the idea).  
S AV
10. Now all scientists call this phenomenon the “Mpemba effect.”  
S AV Obj

## EXERCISE 3

1. (In late September), <sup>S</sup> the Stade de France (in Paris) <sup>AV</sup> hosted <sup>Obj</sup> an unusual spectacle.
2. <sup>S</sup> Hundreds (of actors, stunt people, and extras) <sup>AV</sup> reenacted the famous chariot <sup>Obj</sup> race (from the classic film *Ben-Hur*).
3. The same <sup>S</sup> show <sup>AV</sup> included <sup>Obj</sup> live gladiator fights and a galley ship assault.
4. <sup>S</sup> Promoters also <sup>AV</sup> encouraged <sup>Obj</sup> participation (from the audience).
5. <sup>S</sup> Many (of the 60,000 audience members) <sup>AV</sup> attended (in traditional Roman costumes).
6. The <sup>S</sup> stadium <sup>AV</sup> sold <sup>Obj</sup> toga-like robes (in advance) (along with the tickets).
7. Obviously, the live chariot <sup>S</sup> race <sup>LV</sup> was <sup>Desc</sup> the highlight (of the show).
8. <sup>S</sup> Participants (in the dangerous race) <sup>AV</sup> rehearsed (for nine months).
9. The chariot <sup>S</sup> race <sup>AV</sup> lasted (for fifteen minutes).
10. <sup>S</sup> It <sup>LV</sup> was <sup>Desc</sup> the final event (of the night).

## EXERCISE 4

1. Local news <sup>S</sup> programs <sup>LV</sup> are <sup>Desc</sup> all alike.
2. <sup>S</sup> They <sup>AV</sup> begin (with the top stories) (of the day).
3. These <sup>S</sup> stories <sup>LV</sup> may be <sup>Desc</sup> local, <sup>Desc</sup> national, or <sup>Desc</sup> international.
4. <sup>S</sup> They <sup>AV</sup> might include <sup>Obj</sup> violent crimes, <sup>Obj</sup> traffic jams, <sup>Obj</sup> natural disasters, and political <sup>Obj</sup> upheavals.
5. (After the top stories), <sup>S</sup> one (of the anchors) <sup>AV</sup> offers <sup>Obj</sup> a quick weather update.

6. Then a sportscaster covers the latest scores and team standings.
7. (At some point), a “human interest” story lightens the mood (of the broadcast).
8. And then we hear the latest entertainment news.
9. (Near the end) (of the half hour), the weatherperson gives the full weather forecast.
10. News programs could use an update (of their own).

**EXERCISE 5**

1. Charles Osgood is a writer, TV host, and radio personality.
2. He is also the editor (of a book) (about letters).
3. The book’s title is *Funny Letters (from Famous People)*.
4. (In his book), Osgood shares hilarious letters (from history).
5. Thomas Jefferson wrote (to an acquaintance) (about rodents) [eating his wallet].
6. Benjamin Franklin penned the perfect recommendation letter.
7. Franklin did not know the recommended fellow (at all).
8. Beethoven cursed his friend bitterly (in a letter) one day.
9. (In a letter) the following day, Beethoven praised the same friend excessively and asked him (for a visit).
10. Osgood ends the book (with a letter) (by Julia Child) and includes her secrets (for a long life).

## PARAGRAPH EXERCISE

The <sup>S</sup> history (of masks) <sup>LV Desc</sup> is one (of [surprising] interest). Nearly every <sup>S</sup> race,  
 (from the most primitive times) (to periods) (of [advanced] civilization), <sup>AV</sup> has found  
 some use (for the mask). Perhaps the [painted] <sup>S</sup> face (of a primitive warrior) <sup>AV</sup> inspired  
 the first mask. (At any rate), <sup>Obj</sup> many (of the early tribal masks) <sup>S</sup> suggest the abode  
 (of a fiendish and [warring] spirit). (In tribal and religious ceremonies), (in the  
 dance), (in the drama), (in peace and war), the <sup>S</sup> mask <sup>AV</sup> has played a unique part. <sup>Obj</sup>

One unusual <sup>S</sup> use (of the mask) <sup>LV Desc</sup> was peculiar (to Rome). All families (of  
 prominence) <sup>AV</sup> preserved <sup>Obj</sup> waxen masks (of their [distinguished] ancestors). <sup>S</sup> These  
<sup>LV</sup> were <sup>Desc</sup> not death masks, but portraits (from life). Many <sup>S</sup> families <sup>AV</sup> possessed large  
<sup>Obj</sup> collections and <sup>AV</sup> looked (upon them) (with great pride). (On the occasion) (of a  
 death) (in the family), <sup>S</sup> they <sup>AV</sup> brought <sup>Obj</sup> forth these masks. (During the elaborate  
 funeral ceremonies), certain <sup>S</sup> men <sup>AV</sup> impersonated <sup>Obj</sup> the long line (of [distinguished]  
 ancestors) (by [wearing these lifelike masks]).

## AVOIDING CLICHÉS, AWKWARD PHRASING, AND WORDINESS (PP. 147–148)

Your answers may differ from these possible revisions.

1. I just saw a news update about a famous little animal whose looks are a unique mix of teddy bear, monkey, and miniature dog. His name is Mr. Winkle, and he has his own Web site (mrwinkle.com) that has helped him become an international celebrity. As his home page loads, questions flash across the screen: is it an “alien?” a “stuffed animal?” a “hamster with a permanent?” Mr. Winkle

is certainly cute. I understand why his owner rescued him when she saw him walking down the road alone one day. Since then, she has taken countless pictures of him in quirky little costumes and odd locations. Mr. Winkle has become a cult phenomenon, making personal appearances around the world. He has even worked long enough to become semi-retired, according to his site. Of course, mrwinkle.com sells his pictures at reasonable prices as posters, notepads, and calendars.

2. Shoppers in today's supermarkets want organic foods. They get excited whenever they see an organic label on a package. I work at a busy supermarket, and I see people with and without a lot of money buying foods grown without pesticides and hormones. People have started to care more about their own and their children's eating habits. Organic eggs do taste good, and it feels good to know that the eggs come from happy, free-ranging chickens. Of course, some people will always care the most about price and won't buy organic foods if they cost more.
3. I have a friend who used to be a struggling actor, but now she has become a professional house sitter. First, she joined an organization that advertises house-sitting opportunities. My friend's first house-sitting job was in Malibu. Unbelievably, she was paid to live in a house on the beach, eat free food, and watch free movies. All she had to do was stay at the house and feed the owners' indoor cat. Now my friend is house sitting in Sedona for friends of the owners of the Malibu house. I am thinking seriously of becoming a house sitter myself.

## CORRECTING FOR PARALLEL STRUCTURE (PP. 150–154)

Your revisions may vary.

### EXERCISE 1

1. The sentence is correct.
2. Now that the technologies have merged, all of these units—whether iPhones, Nokias, or BlackBerries—belong to the new category of “smart phones.”
3. Smart phones are convenient but can also be distracting.
4. At any moment, we may receive a text message, a voice message, a video, a reminder, or a phone call.
5. Smart phone noises are almost unlimited: they can buzz, chime, sneeze, drip, speak, and play instrumental music or popular songs to get our attention.
6. The sound systems on smart phones produce louder and clearer sounds than ever before.

7. I always silence my phone or set it to vibrate during movies or in class.
8. If I forget and leave the ringer on high, everyone in the audience or class jumps when it starts to play.
9. Most of us rely on our smart phones to keep us connected and entertained.
10. With all of their combined features, smart phones are not only essential, but also addictive.

**EXERCISE 2**

1. Taking a basic grammar class last semester was fun but challenging.
2. I was ready to learn about parts of speech, verb tenses, and dependent clauses.
3. The teacher showed us how to identify subjects and label verbs.
4. We learned the differences between and the uses for adjectives and adverbs.
5. An adjective always adds information to a noun or a pronoun.
6. Adverbs can modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.
7. I know that I learned a lot about grammar but need to practice it in my writing.
8. Before I registered for the grammar class, I had to decide whether to take a full load or to work part time and take only one or two classes.
9. I decided to work at my family's restaurant part time and focus on the grammar class.
10. I waited on tables in the morning, went to class in the afternoon, and studied at night.

**EXERCISE 3**

1. The Internet is full of information about new gadgets and technology.
2. People want to have the coolest phones, the clearest photos, and the best travel accessories.
3. The sentence is correct.
4. The ring doesn't use technology to help people do something more easily or live more comfortably.
5. Instead, it helps people avoid doing something—forgetting their anniversary.
6. The "Remember Ring" is designed for people who love gadgets but tend to forget special occasions.
7. It includes several hi-tech features: a perpetually charging battery, a clock run by a microchip, and a tiny heating element.

8. The built-in heating element activates at a preprogrammed time and reminds the wearer about an upcoming anniversary.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. The Remember Ring comes in seven styles in both white and yellow gold.

#### EXERCISE 4

1. To begin, decide which person or family you want to focus on.
2. Make a blank chart that includes spaces for all of a person's important information.
3. Then visit a relative who knows a lot of family history and hopefully saves papers and mementos.
4. Plan to spend a lot of time with any such valuable resource.
5. Gather information from and about one individual at a time.
6. Ask about every part of the person's life—marital status, children, religion, occupation, and travel.
7. Thank your resources for providing you with valuable information.
8. Visit the attics or the dusty old cupboards of anyone who has documents relating to your family.
9. Don't forget the local records office in the town where a relative grew up.
10. Purchase books that provide preprinted worksheets and family tree templates to make your family tree come together faster.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. The U.S. Surgeon General makes the following recommendations for living a healthy and happy life.
2. Try to eat the right amounts of fruits and vegetables, and don't forget to eat meat and dairy products (or their vegetarian equivalents).
3. Be sure to see a doctor regularly and get all the usual tests and check-ups.
4. Learn about any illnesses or health conditions that run in your family.
5. Get enough rest and sleep each night.
6. Keep in touch with your friends and family members.
7. Prevent avoidable injuries by wearing seatbelts and helmets.
8. Limit alcohol and over-the-counter drugs.
9. Try not to smoke or to breathe in second-hand smoke if you can avoid it.
10. The Surgeon General's recommendations and warnings make very good sense.

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

Every year in late spring, a long caravan of vehicles arrives at the park in my neighborhood. The caravan consists of a combination of trucks, campers, vans, and trailers full of folded-up kiddie rides. Everyone who lives by or drives by the park can tell that the fair has come to town. It isn't a big fair, but a small, child-friendly one. Most people remember these fairs from when they were growing up. In childhood, the rides seemed huge and scary; in adulthood, they seem small and almost silly. As the fair is being set up in the park for a few days, the kids in the neighborhood look forward to getting on one of those "wild" rides. Their parents look forward to eating the "fair food": the sweet popcorn, the salty popcorn, the mouth-watering corndogs, the deep-fried candy bars, and the juicy snow cones. I can't wait until next year's fair; I'm getting hungry just thinking about it.

**USING PRONOUNS (PP. 159–163)****EXERCISE 1**

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. I             | 6. I          |
| 2. I             | 7. I, me      |
| 3. she and I     | 8. you and me |
| 4. I             | 9. her and me |
| 5. she and I, me | 10. me        |

**EXERCISE 2**

1. *Good parents* give *their* children advice.
2. *their*
3. *it's*
4. *Children* often *look* to *their* parents for guidance in difficult times.
5. For instance, a child might have encountered a bully *in elementary school*.
6. The other schoolchildren might tell the child to keep *quiet* about it.
7. A parent would probably offer *the* child very different advice—to speak to the principal about the problem right away.
8. *Bullies* can only get away with *their* activities if everyone else is too scared or too uninformed to stop *them*.
9. *their*
10. *their, themselves*

**EXERCISE 3**

1. she
2. me
3. You and I
4. she
5. *All* of the participants in the marathon used their own training methods.
6. their
7. he
8. Each of the art students has *a* locker in the hallway.
9. *The neighborhood softball teams* will continue their tournament tomorrow.
10. Each citizen of a democratic country has *a* favorite candidate and can influence the election with *a* vote.

**EXERCISE 4**

1. The sentence is correct.
2. I finished my essay and printed it.
3. Angela told Karen, "There's a cup of coffee on top of your car."
4. Hiking over several hills made us all tired and hungry.
5. Hank got permission to drive his father's car to the bank.
6. When she placed her card in the ATM, the card disappeared.
7. Ted told my brother not to go on the field trip.
8. As we were talking on the phone, the lamp fell.
9. The teacher's suggestions help us improve our drawings.
10. Carla asked her new boss, "Why can't I work on weekends?"

**EXERCISE 5**

1. I put the finishing touches on my painting, placed my brushes in hot water, and moved my painting to the drying rack.
2. People feel more involved when they join in community activities.
3. My car made a funny noise after I filled it with gas.
4. Rainbows always make me think of my trip to Hawaii.
5. Members of the orchestra invited the music students to sit in the orchestra's seats.

6. The doctor told Steve to put ice on his head.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. As the day got hotter and hotter, the frosting slid off the cake.
9. Some students are enjoying the new computer program, but it is too simple for others.
10. The sentence is correct.

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Corrections are *italicized*.

Rude drivers have one thing in common: they think that they know how to drive better than anybody else. The other day, as my friends and *I* were driving to school, we stopped at an intersection. A very old man who used a cane to help him walk started across *the intersection* in front of my friends and *me* just before the light was ready to change. So we waited. But while we waited for him, a male driver behind us started to honk his horn since he couldn't see *the old man*. I wondered, "Does *this driver* want us to hit *that man*, or what?" Finally, *the intersection* was clear. *The rude driver* pulled his car up beside ours, opened his window, and yelled at us before *his car* sped away. The old man reached the other side safely, but the *rude driver* hardly noticed.

## AVOIDING SHIFTS IN PERSON (P. 165)

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

1. Everyone has seen those game machines that are filled with stuffed animals and *include* a crane-like device to grab hold of one and win. Kids and adults love to play these games, *but a lot of children like them so much that they try to crawl up into them*. Some children are successful. A recent article in the *Chippewa Herald* tells of one seven-year-old boy who made it up into the machine. The boy's father turned his back, and *before he knew it*, his son was sitting inside the game with all the stuffed animals around him. It took firefighters over an hour to rescue the little boy. *The article didn't say whether* he got to take home the stuffed animal that he wanted.
2. I was reading about superstitions for my psychology class, and I learned that a lot of these beliefs concern brooms and sweeping. One superstition says that, whenever *people* change *their* residence, *they* should get a new broom. People should not take their old brooms with them because the brooms might carry any bad luck that was swept up at the old place and bring it to the new one. Also, if *people* sweep dirt out an open door, *they should* make it the back door so that the bad luck will depart forever. If *they* sweep dirt out the front way, the same bad luck will come right back in again. Finally, *people should* never walk across a fallen broomstick unless *they* never want to get married, for that is

the fate for anyone who steps over a broomstick. I bet most people would be surprised by how many things can go wrong when *they* pick up a broom.

3. The paragraph is correct.

## REVIEW OF SENTENCE STRUCTURE ERRORS (PP. 166–167)

1. B. frag (It was a free DVD player, and I happened to need one at the time.)
2. A. pro (The student who began the debate was *he*.)
3. A. s-v agr (Supplying food and drinks for a party costs much more than it used to.)
4. B. mm (*They were singing so softly that* the professor could hardly hear them.)
5. B. pro agr (We both qualify for it, and no one else has turned in *an* application.)
6. B. ro and // (The company responded with a letter of apology *and* a coupon for more cereal.)
7. B. shift in person (These good times happen when *I or we* least expect them.)
8. B. pro ref (The driver put my father's suitcases in the trunk and closed it.)
9. A. // (Katrina plays *the cello, the flute, and the piano*.)
10. A. pro (My parents made a promise to my brother and *me*.)
11. A. awk and // (Gift cards have become popular as birthday presents and *graduation gifts*.)
12. B. shift in time (I thought it would be a good location, but the seats *were* too close.)
13. A. frag (*Since most mobile phones display the time*, many people don't wear watches any more.)
14. B. pro (However, I write my characters more neatly than *he [does]*.)
15. B. s-v agr (The list of books for different classes is not always complete or correct.)

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Your revisions may differ, but here is one possibility:

## Getting Involved

Getting involved in other people's business can be both right and wrong, depending on people's relationships and situations. For example, if one friend is in a bad relationship and the other is concerned, it may be time for the concerned friend to get involved. Stepping in not only shows real friendship but might also lead to solutions.

On the other hand, some people just like to be nosey, and they get involved in other people's business for fun. Such people need to know the details of others' lives to make their own lives more interesting. I have been in situations where peers have tried to learn about my life and problems. All of their discoveries turned into rumors.

Since I have learned from others' mistakes, I would never get involved in other people's business if it could not benefit them in some way. People should better their own lives rather than worry about anyone else's.

## PUNCTUATION AND CAPITAL LETTERS

### PERIOD, QUESTION MARK, EXCLAMATION POINT, SEMICOLON, COLON, DASH (PP. 171–175)

#### EXERCISE 1

1. I need to buy a cake for my boss's retirement party, and I wonder what size cake I should order.
2. Usually I see rectangular flat cakes at such celebrations; however, I would like to make this party different.
3. Shirley is the name of my boss, but the last thing I want is a plain cake with "Happy Retirement, Shirley!" written on it.
4. I consider Shirley the best boss I'll ever have; why shouldn't she have the best retirement party ever?
5. Maybe I should go to the bakery that provided the cake for my friend Lauren's graduation party.
6. Lauren's cake was shaped like a huge graduation cap; the mortarboard was made of poured sugar, and even the tassel was edible!
7. Underneath the cap-cake was a diploma created out of fondant, and it had real words written in black frosting and a gold seal—just like the seal on Lauren's real diploma.
8. Since Shirley is mostly associated with the cowboy boots that we sell at our store, I'll have the cake made in the shape of a pair of her favorite boots.
9. That way, there will be enough cake for everyone, and Shirley will have a special cake to remember forever.
10. Now I just have to decide which boots to pattern the cake after, but that's the fun part, isn't it?

#### EXERCISE 2

1. What have spiders done for you lately?
2. In the near future, a spider may save your life. (or !)

3. Researchers in New York have discovered the healing power of one species in particular: the Chilean Rose tarantula.
4. This spider's venom includes a substance that could stop a human's heart attack once it begins.
5. The substance has the ability to restore the rhythm of a heart that has stopped beating.
6. A scientist in Connecticut is experimenting with the killing power of another arachnid; the creature he is studying is the Australian funnel-web spider.
7. Currently, pesticides that destroy insects on crops also end up killing animals accidentally.
8. The funnel-web spider's venom is lethal to unwanted insects; however, it's harmless to animals.
9. Scientists would have to reproduce the funnel-web spider's venom artificially in order to have enough to use in fields.
10. As a result of these studies into the power of spider venom, you may live longer and enjoy pesticide-free foods.

**EXERCISE 3**

1. Chang and Eng were a famous pair of conjoined twins; they lived in the 1800s.
2. They were known as the "Siamese twins" because they were born in Siam; Siam is now called Thailand.
3. Chang and Eng traveled the world—as celebrities of sorts—and eventually made enough money to settle down.
4. The sentence is correct.
5. The twins enjoyed the same pastimes: smoking cigars, reading books, and buying clothes.
6. Eng was known for the following: having a calm disposition and playing endless games of poker.
7. Chang—unlike his brother—could lose his temper easily.
8. Chang and Eng married two sisters from the same family: Adelaide and Sarah.
9. The two couples lived together at first; then the twins divided their time between two houses one for each of their growing families.
10. The famous twins had a total of 21 children; their descendents are still a rich part of the Mount Airy community in North Carolina.

**EXERCISE 4**

1. The sentence is correct.
2. The sentence is correct.

3. One relatively safe place is inside a building that has plumbing pipes or electrical wires; those channels can absorb the electrical energy unleashed by lightning.
4. Of course, once inside such a building, people should stay away from the end sources of plumbing and wiring: faucets, hoses, phone receivers, and computer terminals.
5. Buildings without pipes or wires are not safe shelters during lightning strikes; these might include pergolas, dugouts, and tents.
6. Outside, lightning can move over the ground; therefore, you should be aware of a position that emergency officials call the “lightning squat.”
7. The sentence is correct.
8. The sentence is correct.
9. Lightning is electrical energy; consequently, it can travel far from the actual storm clouds.
10. The sentence is correct.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. “Am I going to get old like Grandpa?”
2. This question is typical of the ones children ask their parents about aging; luckily, there are books that help parents answer them.
3. Lynne S. Dumas wrote the book *Talking with Your Children about a Troubled World*; in it, she discusses children’s concerns and suggests ways of dealing with them.
4. In response to the question about getting old “like Grandpa,” Dumas stresses one main point: be positive. (or—be positive.)
5. Too often, Dumas says, parents pass their own fears on to children; parents who focus on the negative aspects of aging will probably have children who worry about growing old.
6. Other subjects—homelessness, for instance—require special consideration for parents.
7. Dumas explains that children carefully observe how parents deal with a person asking for spare change or offering to wash windshields for money.
8. The unplanned nature of these encounters often catches parents off guard; therefore, they should try to prepare a uniform response to such situations.
9. Dumas also suggests that parents take positive action—involving children in charitable donations and activities, for example—in order to illustrate their compassion for the homeless.
10. The most important aspect in communicating with children is honesty; the second and third most important are patience and understanding.

**PROOFREADING EXERCISE**

The ingredients you will need to make quick, delicious spaghetti sauce include onions, garlic, mushrooms, and canned tomato sauce; meat is optional. First, at the bottom of a big heavy pot on high heat, you should sauté the onions, garlic, and mushrooms in olive oil; then put the vegetables aside and brown the meat, if any. Once the meat has browned nicely, it's time to add the tomato sauce and seasonings. You can use oregano and basil or just salt and pepper. Actually, you can use any blend of spices to suit your taste. Try adding a teaspoon or even a tablespoon of sugar to keep the sauce from being bitter. Next, return the sautéed vegetables to the pot. Cook the sauce mixture over medium heat until it begins to boil. Finally, lower the temperature and simmer the sauce until it achieves the perfect consistency: thick and glossy. Serve the sauce on top of any kind of cooked pasta.

**COMMA RULES 1, 2, AND 3 (PP. 177–182)****EXERCISE 1**

1. The young actor named Sabu began his career in 1937, and he was famous for his unique background and abilities.
2. The sentence is correct.
3. The sentence is correct.
4. In real life, Sabu understood elephants very well, for his father was an owner and trainer of elephants.
5. Sabu's first film was called *The Elephant Boy*, and it made him an instant celebrity.
6. The sentence is correct.
7. Sabu played exotic, friendly characters in these two films, and the special effects matched today's standards and in some ways exceeded them.
8. The sentence is correct.
9. *The Jungle Book* starring Sabu was made twenty-five years before Disney's animated version, but it captured the essence of the mysterious jungle even more vividly with real actors and animals.
10. The sentence is correct.

**EXERCISE 2**

1. Whenever I need to borrow some blueberries, an onion, or a teaspoon of ginger, I go next door to my neighbor's apartment.
2. The sentence is correct.

3. Albert always has the season's best fruits, the tastiest vegetables, and the freshest spices.
4. The sentence is correct.
5. He doesn't ask for blueberries, onions, or ginger, but he will ask to borrow a hammer, a wrench, or a Phillips-head screwdriver.
6. The sentence is correct.
7. If I buy myself a new dustpan, broom, or rake, I buy an extra one for Albert.
8. The sentence is correct.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. The sentence is correct.

### EXERCISE 3

1. As if people didn't have enough to worry about, Melinda Muse has written a book called *I'm Afraid, You're Afraid: 448 Things to Fear and Why*.
2. In her book, Muse points out the dangers of common places, objects, foods, months, days, and activities.
3. If people plan a trip to Vegas, they should worry because paramedics can't get to ailing gamblers, due to the crowds and huge size of the buildings.
4. For another dangerous spot, consider the beauty parlor, where people suffer strokes caused by leaning their heads back too far into the shampoo sink.
5. If new clothes are not washed before they are worn, they may transfer dangerous chemicals to the wearers' eyes, skin, and lungs.
6. Among foods to be avoided, grapefruit juice can interfere with certain medications' effectiveness, and nutmeg contains hallucinogenic substances.
7. Of all the months, July ranks highest in certain kinds of accidental injuries and poisonings, due to Independence Day celebrations and other summer activities.
8. Being linked with more suicides and heart attacks than any other, Mondays are the most dangerous days of the week.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. After reading *I'm Afraid, You're Afraid*, it's possible to be afraid of almost everything.

**EXERCISE 4**

1. Speaking of worst-case scenarios, there is a book about how to survive them, and it's called *The Worst-Case Scenario Survival Handbook*.
2. The coauthors of this self-help book are aware that most of us will never have to overpower an alligator or make an emergency landing on an airplane, yet they want us to be prepared nonetheless.
3. In the "About the Authors" section of the book, readers learn that Joshua Piven is a first-time writer, but he has survived encounters with robbers, muggers, and stalled subway trains.
4. About Piven's coauthor, we discover that David Borgenicht has written two other books and has had his share of worst-case scenarios, especially while traveling.
5. Although the overall tone of the book is somewhat humorous because it covers such outlandish topics, the information it shares is deadly serious and could save a life.
6. The sentence is correct.
7. One of the best examples illustrates a way to avoid being attacked by a mountain lion, and that is to try to appear as large as possible, so the drawing shows a man holding the sides of his jacket out wide like bat wings to scare the lion away.
8. If readers wonder whether they can trust the advice on escaping from quicksand, they can just flip to the list of sources consulted for each section, in this case an expert on the physics of natural phenomena at the University of Sydney, Australia.
9. Wisely, Piven and Borgenicht begin the book by warning readers to seek professional help whenever possible instead of trying the survival techniques themselves.
10. The authors know that if people go looking for trouble, they'll probably find it.

**EXERCISE 5**

1. Fish may be considered "brain food," but I've never liked it.
2. While everyone is saying how delicious a big salmon steak is or how yummy the shrimp tastes, you'll find me grimacing and munching on a piece of bread and butter.
3. Part of the problem with fish is the smell, but my friends who love to eat fish also love the smell of fish cooking.
4. I always thought that was strange, but it makes sense, doesn't it?

5. If someone hates the taste of onions, that person probably also hates the smell of onions cooking.
6. Come to think of it, my husband hates to eat sweets and doesn't like the smell of them either.
7. When we walk into a bakery together, he practically has to hold his nose the way I would in a fish market.
8. To me, that's odd, but my aversion must be just as odd to someone who loves fish.
9. Our daughter loves the taste of bacon, but she hates the smell of bacon frying.
10. The sentence is correct.

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

Use a person's title and last name until you are invited to use first names, which will invariably be immediately. This is not a sign of intimacy; Americans feel that the use of last names is so formal that it is uncomfortable to address others in this manner. You will find that Americans almost always introduce themselves or others using first names, even in business. If you are introduced to someone by his or her first name, then it is perfectly acceptable to use the first name.

Punctuality is important in business. Always phone ahead if you are going to be more than 10 minutes late. Likewise, punctuality is valued for prestigious social engagements. However, punctuality is considerably more flexible for casual gatherings among friends; being a few minutes late is the norm, and it's not unheard of for people to trickle into a casual party among friends anywhere from 15 minutes to an hour after the designated starting time of the party.

Americans are generally very gregarious and welcoming. Frequent smiling is a cultural norm, an important social custom that should not be misinterpreted as superficiality. Maintain a personal distance of at least one arm's length.

Conversation can be animated, quite loud, and refreshingly direct. Although in some situations political correctness obliges people to choose their words carefully so they won't offend anyone, in others you will meet some of the most straightforward people in the world. The freedom to express one's opinions is highly prized in the United States.

### SENTENCE WRITING

Here are some possible combinations. Yours may differ.

The final exam was long and difficult, so most students were unable to finish it.

Ever since the gardeners started arriving at 7:00 in the morning and using their lawnmowers and other loud machines, no one in the neighborhood can sleep in anymore.

When I grew up in the 1960s, people rode in cars without seatbelts, without special car seats for children, and without airbags.

## COMMA RULES 4, 5, AND 6 (PP. 185–190)

For Exercises 1 and 2, correct sentences remain in the answers without commas for the sake of comparison.

### EXERCISE 1

1. Any car that has a tracking device is easier to find if it's ever stolen.
2. My car, which luckily had a tracking device, was found within an hour of being stolen.
3. Ms. Tate, my creative writing teacher, has published several of her own short stories.
4. The instructor who teaches the creative writing class has published several of her own short stories.
5. I sense that Henry doesn't like to talk to Jenny.
6. Jenny, on the other hand, seems to enjoy Henry's sense of humor.
7. The lion, a powerful and majestic animal, symbolizes strength and independence.
8. The white lion cubs that were born in December are already on display at the zoo.
9. Students who volunteered to decorate the auditorium would be allowed to listen to the band's rehearsal.
10. Mark and Monica, who volunteered to decorate the stage, were able to help the band choose its songs.

### EXERCISE 2

1. We hope, of course, that people will honor their summons for jury duty.
2. Of course we hope that people will honor their summons for jury duty.
3. People who serve as jurors every time they're called deserve our appreciation.
4. Thelma and Trevor Martin, who serve as jurors every time they're called, deserve our appreciation.
5. We should therefore be as understanding as we can be about the slow legal process.
6. Therefore, we should be as understanding as we can be about the slow legal process.
7. A legal system that believes people are innocent until proven guilty must offer a trial-by-jury option.
8. The U.S. legal system, which believes people are innocent until proven guilty, offers a trial-by-jury option.

9. With that option, we hope that no one will receive an unfair trial.
10. With that option, no one, we hope, will receive an unfair trial.

**EXERCISE 3**

1. Bobble-head dolls, those figurines with heads that bob up and down, have become the souvenir of choice for many modern teams and companies.
2. The sentence is correct.
3. Others say these types of ceramic nodding figures, called “nodder” dolls in Europe, originated there in the 1800s.
4. Much more recently, in the 1960s to be exact, Japan began producing what some call “bobbinheads” as souvenirs to sell at baseball parks in the United States.
5. The sentence is correct.
6. Two of the most famous people of the twentieth century, President Kennedy and Elvis Presley, were immortalized as bobble-head dolls.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. Now some cereal boxes, traditionally the showplaces for athletic triumphs, include tiny bobble-heads as prizes inside.
9. Even William Rehnquist, Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court, had a bobble-head doll in his likeness.
10. The Rehnquist bobble-head, a must-have for any nodding-doll collector, was commissioned by a law journal to encourage people to read about legal issues.

**EXERCISE 4**

1. The story of Dracula, the frightening Prince Vlad Tepes, has been fascinating people across the world for hundreds of years.
2. He was held as a prisoner in Bran Castle, a medieval fortress in Transylvania in the 15th century. (This sentence needs only one comma; the end of the sentence is the end of the “scoopable.”)
3. Bran Castle, also called Dracula’s Castle, has become a popular tourist attraction.
4. The sentence is correct.
5. The sentence is correct.
6. The sentence is correct.

7. It was given to Marie, Queen of Romania, in 1920.
8. The sentence is correct.
9. The sentence is correct.
10. Queen Marie's grandson, Dominic von Habsburg, now owns the castle, along with his two sisters, Maria Magdalena and Elizabeth.

#### EXERCISE 5

1. One of the weirdest competitions on earth, the Wife Carrying World Championships, takes place in Finland once a year.
2. These load-carrying races, which may have begun as training rituals for Finnish soldiers, have become popular in the United States and all over the world.
3. Each pair of participants, made up of one man and one "wife," has to make it through an obstacle course in the shortest time possible.
4. The "wife" half of the team has to weigh at least 49 kilos, 108 pounds.
5. She does not have to be married to the man who carries her; she can, indeed, be someone else's wife or even unmarried.
6. The wife-carrying course includes two sections, a part on land and a part in water.
7. The sentence is correct.
8. The wife-dropping penalty, which is fifteen seconds added to the pair's time, is enough to disqualify most couples.
9. Contest officials allow one piece of equipment, a belt that the man can wear so that the "wife" has something to hold on to during the race.
10. The winning couple wins a prize, but the coveted title, Wife Carrying World Champion, is reward enough for most.

#### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

There are two types of punctuation, internal punctuation and end punctuation. Internal punctuation is used within the sentence, and end punctuation is used at the end of the sentence. There are six main rules for the placement of commas, the most important pieces of internal punctuation. Semicolons, the next most important, have two main functions. Their primary function, separating two independent clauses, is also the most widely known. A lesser-known need for semicolons, to separate items in a list already containing commas, occurs rarely in college writing. Colons and dashes have special uses within sentences. And of the three pieces of end punctuation—periods, question marks, and exclamation points—one is obviously the most common. That piece is the period, which signals the end of the majority of English sentences.

**SENTENCE WRITING**

Here are some possible combinations. Yours may differ.

I think that the average student's life is full of distractions and extraneous information from the Internet and many other forms of media. (or) The average student's life, I think, is full of distractions and extraneous information from the Internet and many other forms of media.

She plans to buy herself an expensive watch by Tag Heuer, her favorite brand. (or) She plans to buy herself an expensive Tag Heuer watch.

Only two people, the manager and an actor, were in the store when the commercial was filmed. (or) The manager and an actor were the only people in the store when the commercial was filmed.

**COMMA REVIEW EXERCISE**

We're writing you this e-mail, Lena, to give you directions to the reunion this weekend. [4] We know that you will be driving with a few others, but we want to be sure that everyone knows the way. [1] When we contacted some of our classmates over the Internet, several of the messages were returned as "undeliverable." [3] We hope, therefore, that this one gets through to you. [5] We can't wait to see everyone again: Michelle, Tom, Olivia, and Brad. [2] Dr. Milford, our favorite professor, will be there to welcome all of the returning students. [6]

**QUOTATION MARKS AND UNDERLINING/ITALICS  
(PP. 192–197)****EXERCISE 1**

1. A film crew was setting up in the park by my house, and I saw a sign that said, "Extras holding."
2. I found someone who didn't look too busy and asked, "Are you looking for extras?"
3. "Yes," she answered, "if you want to be in a crowd scene, just fill out the paperwork and sit over there."
4. I didn't even think twice and told her, "Sure, I'd love to be in it."
5. I found out from another extra that we were filming the pilot for a new TV comedy series along the lines of Desperate Housewives.
6. When I asked what I was supposed to do, he said, "They'll give you a picket sign, and you'll wave it. That's it."
7. I held my sign that said, "No more cuts to education!" and waved it when I was told to.
8. While it was happening, I kept telling myself, "You're going to be on TV—just try not to look stupid."

9. I heard someone ask, “Did anyone else hear that the title of the series is going to be Tangle Square?”
10. We all shook our heads; then I added, “But that’s an interesting title, if it’s true.”

### EXERCISE 2

1. I am reading a book called Don’t: A Manual of Mistakes & Improprieties More or Less Prevalent in Conduct and Speech.
2. The book’s contents are divided into chapters with titles such as “At Table,” “In Public,” and “In General.”
3. In the section about table don’ts, the book offers the following warning: “Don’t bend over your plate, or drop your head to get each mouthful.”
4. The table advice continues by adding, “Don’t bite your bread. Break it off.”
5. This book offers particularly comforting advice about conducting oneself in public.
6. For instance, it states, “Don’t brush against people, or elbow people, or in any way show disregard for others.”
7. When meeting others on the street, the book advises, “Don’t be in a haste to introduce. Be sure that it is mutually desired before presenting one person to another.”
8. In the section titled “In General,” there are more tips about how to get along in society, such as “Don’t underrate everything that others do, and overstate your own doings.”
9. The Don’t book has this to say about books, whether borrowed or owned: “Read them, but treat them as friends that must not be abused.”
10. And one can never take the following warning too much to heart: “Don’t make yourself in any particular way a nuisance to your neighbors or your family.”

### EXERCISE 3

1. “Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening” is a poem by Robert Frost.
2. “Once you finish your responses,” the teacher said, “bring your test papers up to my desk.”
3. I subscribe to several periodicals, including Time and U.S. News & World Report.
4. “Our country is the world,” William Lloyd Garrison believed, “our countrymen are all mankind.”
5. “Do you know,” my teacher asked, “that there are only three ways to end a sentence?”
6. Edward Young warned young people to “Be wise with speed. A fool at forty is a fool indeed.”

7. In Shakespeare's play Romeo and Juliet, Mercutio accidentally gets stabbed and shouts, "A plague on both your houses!"
8. "There is no such thing as a moral or an immoral book," Oscar Wilde writes in his novel The Picture of Dorian Gray; "Books are either well written, or badly written."
9. Molière felt that "One should eat to live, and not live to eat."
10. Did you say, "I'm sleepy" or "I'm beeping"?

#### EXERCISE 4

1. Women's Wit and Wisdom is the title of a book I found in the library.
2. The book includes many great insights that were written or spoken by women throughout history.
3. England's Queen Elizabeth I noted in the sixteenth century that "A clear and innocent conscience fears nothing."
4. "Nothing is so good as it seems beforehand," observed George Eliot, a female author whose real name was Mary Ann Evans.
5. Some of the women's quotations are funny; Alice Roosevelt Longworth, for instance, said, "If you don't have anything good to say about anyone, come and sit by me."
6. "If life is a bowl of cherries," asked Erma Bombeck, "what am I doing in the pits?"
7. Some of the quotations are serious, such as Gloria Steinem's statement, "The future depends on what each of us does every day."
8. Maya Lin, the woman who designed Washington D.C.'s Vietnam Veterans Memorial, reminded us that, as she put it, "War is not just a victory or a loss. . . . People die."
9. Emily Dickinson had this to say about truth: "Truth is such a rare thing, it is delightful to tell it."
10. Finally, columnist Ann Landers advised one of her readers that "The naked truth is always better than the best-dressed lie."

#### EXERCISE 5

1. In his book Who's Buried in Grant's Tomb? A Tour of Presidential Gravesites, Brian Lamb records the final words of American presidents who have passed away.
2. Some of their goodbyes were directed at their loved ones; for example, President Zachary Taylor told those around him, "I regret nothing, but I am sorry that I am about to leave my friends."

3. Other presidents, such as William Henry Harrison, who died after only one month in office, addressed more political concerns; Harrison said, “I wish you to understand the true principles of the government. I wish them carried out. I ask for nothing more.”
4. John Tyler became president due to Harrison’s sudden death; Tyler served his term, lived to be seventy-one, and said, “Perhaps it is best” when his time came.
5. At the age of eighty-three, Thomas Jefferson fought to live long enough to see the fiftieth anniversary of America’s independence; on that day in 1826, Jefferson was one of only three (out of fifty-six) signers of the “Declaration of Independence” still living, and he asked repeatedly before he died, “Is it the fourth?”
6. John Adams, one of the other three remaining signers, died later the same day—July 4, 1826—and his last words ironically were “Thomas Jefferson still survives.”
7. The third president to die on the Fourth of July (1831) was James Monroe; while he was president, people within the government got along so well that his time in office was known as “the era of good feelings.”
8. Doctors attempted to help James Madison live until the Fourth of July, but he put off their assistance; on June 26, 1836, when a member of his family became alarmed at his condition, Madison comforted her by saying, “Nothing more than a change of mind, my dear,” and he passed away.
9. Grover Cleveland, who had suffered from many physical problems, was uneasy at his death; before losing consciousness, he said, “I have tried so hard to do right.”
10. Finally, George Washington, our first president, also suffered greatly but faced death bravely; “I die hard,” he told the people by his bedside, “but I am not afraid to go. ’Tis well.”

### PROOFREADING EXERCISE

We were allowed to choose a book to review in our journals last week. The teacher specified that it should be a short nonfiction book about something of interest to us. I found a great book to review. It’s called Tattoo: Secrets of a Strange Art. Albert Parry breaks the contents down into chapters about tattoo legends, techniques, and purposes. A few of the chapter titles are “The Art and Its Masters,” “The Circus,” “Identification,” and “Removal.” The book also includes illustrations and photographs of tattoo designs and tattooed people and animals throughout history, including Miss Stella: The Tattooed Lady, The Famous Tattooed Cow, and Georgius Constantine. Parry describes Constantine’s tattoos in the following way: “the most complete, elaborate, and artistic tattooing ever witnessed in America or Europe.” Parry continues, “There was almost no part of his body, not a quarter-inch of the skin, free from designs.” Needless to say, since I love tattoos, I loved Parry’s book about them.

## CAPITAL LETTERS (PP. 199–202)

In this section, titles of larger works are *italicized* rather than underlined.

### EXERCISE 1

1. I have always wanted to learn another language besides English.
2. Recently, I have been watching a lot of films from India.
3. Some people call them “Bollywood movies.”
4. Whatever they are called, I love to watch them.
5. One part of these movies that I love is their language: Hindi.
6. I have to use English subtitles to understand the dialogue most of the time.
7. But sometimes I can catch what’s happening without the subtitles.
8. Because of my intense interest in Hindi-language films, I plan to take a Hindi class.
9. I have already bought a book that explains the Devanagari writing system.
10. Now I will enroll in a class and learn Hindi as a second language.

### EXERCISE 2

1. When people think of jazz, they think of *Down Beat* magazine.
2. *Down Beat’s* motto may be “Jazz, Blues & Beyond,” but some people think that the magazine has gone too far “beyond” by including two guitarists in the *Down Beat* Hall of Fame.
3. The two musicians in question are Jimi Hendrix and Frank Zappa.
4. Jimi Hendrix was inducted into the Hall of Fame in 1970.
5. *Down Beat* added Frank Zappa to the list in 1994.
6. Since then, readers and editors have been debating whether Hendrix and Zappa belong in the same group as Duke Ellington, John Coltrane, and Miles Davis.
7. Those who play jazz guitar have some of the strongest opinions on the subject.
8. Russell Malone, Mark Elf, and John Abercrombie all agree that Hendrix and Zappa were great guitarists but not jazz guitarists.
9. Others like Steve Tibbetts and Bill Frisell don’t have any problem putting Hendrix on the list, but Tibbetts isn’t so sure about including Zappa.
10. It will be interesting to see who *Down Beat’s* future inductees will be.

**EXERCISE 3**

1. I grew up watching *It's a Wonderful Life* once a year on TV in the winter.
2. That was before the colorized version and before every station started showing it fifteen times a week throughout the months of November and December.
3. I especially remember enjoying that holiday classic with my mother and brothers when we lived on Seventh Avenue.
4. "Hurry up!" Mom would yell, "You're going to miss the beginning!"
5. My favorite part has always been when Jimmy Stewart's character, George Bailey, uses his own money to help the people of Bedford Falls and to save his father's Building and Loan.
6. George's disappointment turns to happiness after he and Donna Reed's character, Mary, move into the abandoned house on their honeymoon.
7. Of course, mean old Mr. Potter takes advantage of Uncle Billy's carelessness at the bank, and that starts George's breakdown.
8. In his despair, George places the petals of his daughter Zuzu's flower in his pocket, leaves his house, and wants to commit suicide.
9. Luckily, all of George's good deeds have added up over the years, and he is given a chance to see that thanks to a character named Clarence.
10. When George feels Zuzu's petals in his pocket, he knows that he's really made it home again, and the people of Bedford Falls come to help him.

**EXERCISE 4**

1. Most people don't know the name Elzie Crisler Segar.
2. Segar was the creator of the comic character Popeye.
3. Segar based Popeye and many of his fellow characters on residents of the town of Chester, Illinois, where Segar was born.
4. Popeye's inspiration was a Chester bartender named Frank "Rocky" Fiegel.
5. Fiegel was a brawler by nature and might have even been a sailor at some point.
6. Segar learned how to draw by taking a correspondence course.
7. One of Segar's bosses at a Chester movie house, J. William Schuchert, was the prototype for Wimpy.
8. Segar introduced Olive Oyl's character in his *Thimble Theater* comic strip.
9. Olive was based on a Chester store owner, Dora Paskel.
10. The town of Chester celebrates the work of Elzie Crisler Segar with a yearly Popeye picnic, the Popeye Museum, a Popeye statue, and Segar Memorial Park.

**EXERCISE 5**

1. *The New Yorker* magazine has a cartoon contest every week.
2. At the back of each issue, there is a page devoted to the contest.
3. The heading at the top of the page reads “Cartoon Caption Contest.”
4. Below the heading is a brief description of the rules involved in the contest.
5. It begins, “Each week, we provide a cartoon in need of a caption.”
6. It continues, “You, the reader, submit a caption, we choose three finalists, and you vote for your favorite.”
7. Then it specifies the deadline for that week’s submissions.
8. At the bottom of the page are three cartoons: one is titled “The Winning Caption,” the second lists “The Finalists,” and the third shows “This Week’s Contest.”
9. Winners of the caption contest are named in the magazine, and they receive a signed print of the cartoon that they helped to create.
10. Any U.S. resident who is eighteen or over can enter the contest or vote.

**REVIEW OF PUNCTUATION AND CAPITAL LETTERS (P. 203)**

1. On August 4, 1961, President Barack H. Obama was born in Hawaii.
2. Have you read all three books in the Twilight series? (or *Twilight*)
3. Mina and Tracy drove all the way from Niagara Falls to New York City.
4. “How many semesters of Chinese have you taken?” my counselor asked.
5. The Pyramids of Giza are among the most famous manmade objects in the world.
6. Congratulations, Ms. Roberts, on your teacher-of-the-year award; you deserve it.
7. The person who holds on to that car without letting go will win it.
8. I am working toward a degree in engineering, and my brother is in the nursing program.
9. Due to the low number of completed loan applications in the spring, the Financial Aid Office has extended its summer deadline.
10. The Foreign Film Club needs people to pass out flyers—should we volunteer?
11. Samantha needs a new smart phone because the phone she has now is really “dumb.”
12. “Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening” is a famous poem by Robert Frost.
13. Whenever Eric gets a traffic ticket, he gets so nervous that he starts to shake all over.

14. The happy customer stood in front of the cash register and yelled the same thing over and over: “I won a thousand dollars! I can’t believe it!”
15. My Chinese teacher helps us remember the look of certain written characters by posing like them; for example, she stands with her feet firm and her arms stretched wide to represent the character that means “strong.”

## COMPREHENSIVE TEST (PP. 204–205)

1. (apos) Why do *children’s* movies have better stories than the ones their parents go to see?
2. (ww) I had to take a powerful antibiotic, and I’m still feeling *its* side effects.
3. (p) I wonder how I can get an earlier registration date.
4. (pro) The fencing coach sent a special certificate to my opponent and *me*.
5. (p) “Welcome,” the teacher said to all of us, “are we ready to begin?”
6. (c) Depending of the price of gasoline at the time, I either ride my bike or drive to school.
7. ( cliché) Her hands were *very cold* when she left the skating rink.
8. (ro) Family reunions always seem like a good idea, but they never live up to people’s expectations.
9. (wordy) *She found a hole in the bottom of her backpack.*
10. (cs) We volunteered to read books to kids at the library, *and* we felt fantastic afterward.
11. (adv) You missed some *really* important notes when you were absent.
12. (dm) *I had to hop on one foot when* my heel broke off my shoe during the parade.
13. (pro ref) We ordered rice and beans, but *together they* tasted like rice pudding.
14. (pro agr) Everyone was allowed to bring one *parent*.
15. (/ /) The librarian showed us the stacks, the *computers*, and *the copiers*.
16. (adj) I felt *bad* when my sister didn’t get a promotion.
17. (s-v agr) Each of the math tutors *has* a different area of expertise.
18. (ww) The critique of our sculpture projects took much longer *than* I expected.
19. (frag and awk) An error *occurred* while I *was uploading* my video to YouTube.
20. (ww) *They’re* going to pack their boxes on Wednesday and move them on Friday.

## WRITING

### ORGANIZING IDEAS (PP. 223–224)

#### EXERCISE 1 THESIS OR FACT?

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. FACT   | 6. FACT    |
| 2. THESIS | 7. THESIS  |
| 3. FACT   | 8. FACT    |
| 4. THESIS | 9. THESIS  |
| 5. THESIS | 10. THESIS |

### ADDING TRANSITIONAL EXPRESSIONS (PP. 226–227)

#### EXERCISE 2 ADDING TRANSITIONAL EXPRESSIONS

This year, my family and I decided to celebrate the Fourth of July in a whole new way. *Previously*, we always attended a fireworks show at the sports stadium near our house. The firework shows got better every year; *however*, we were getting tired of the crowds and the noise. *In addition*, we were starting to feel bad about our own lack of creativity. The goal this time was to have each family member think of a craft project, recipe, or game related to the Fourth. The result was a day full of fun activities and good things to eat—all created by us! *First*, my sister Helen taught us to make seltzer rockets from an idea she found on the Internet. We used the fireless “firecrackers” as table decorations until late afternoon when we set them off. *Then*, we ate dinner. Mom and Dad’s contribution was “Fourth of July Franks,” which were hot dogs topped with ketchup, onions, and a sprinkling of blue-corn chips. For dessert, my brother Leon assembled tall parfaits made with layers of red and blue Jell-O cubes divided by ridges of whipped cream. *Finally*, we played a game of charades in which all of the answers had something to do with the American flag, the Declaration of Independence, Paul Revere’s ride, and other such topics. We all enjoyed the Fourth so much that the events will probably become our new tradition.

### WRITING SUMMARIES (P. 245)

#### ASSIGNMENT 16 WRITE A SHORT SUMMARY

##### SUMMARY OF “CAT LOVERS VS. DOG LOVERS”

Certain characteristics make people prefer either cats or dogs as pets. The first is whether people seek solitude or companionship. Cat people like to be alone, and dog people like to be with others. Also, studies show that women prefer cats and men prefer dogs. This division goes back to the cave-dwelling days of our ancestors. Obviously, some people like both animals and have no preference. And most people exhibit catlike and doglike qualities in the ways they behave. So there is really no simple answer to whether a particular person would like a cat or a dog the best.

# Index

- a, an*, 4
- abbreviations, 57
- accept, except*, 4
- adjectives, 22, 28–34
- adverbs, 22, 29–34
- advise, advice*, 4
- affect, effect*, 4
- all ready, already*, 5
- are, our*, 5
- argument*, 236–241
- awkward phrasing, 145–148
  
- body paragraphs, 209–211, 223
- brainstorming, 220–222
- brake, break*, 5
- breaking words into parts, 49
  
- capitalization, 55, 198–203
- choose, chose*, 5
- clauses, 60–66, 73–75
  - punctuation of, 74, 81–82, 87–94
  - 169–190
- clichés, 144–148
- clothes, cloths*, 5
- clustering, 221–222
- coarse, course*, 6
- colons, 170–175
- comma splices, 176
- commas, 176–190
- complement, compliment*, 6
- compound words, 49, 55
- concise writing, 146–148
- concluding paragraphs, 209, 224–225
- conjunctions, 22
- conscious, conscience*, 6
- contractions, 35–40
  
- dangling modifiers, 133–136
- dashes, 170–175
- dependent clauses, 73–79, 81–86
  - punctuation of, 74, 88, 177, 184–190
- derivations, 57
- description, 215, 218–219
- dessert, desert*, 6
- dictionaries, 53–58
  - abbreviations, 57
  - capitalization, 55
  - compound words, 55
  - definitions, 53
  - derivations, 56
  - foreign words/phrases, 58
  - miscellaneous information, 58
  - names of people, 57
  - names of places, 57
  - parts of speech, 54
  - pronunciation, 53
  - spelling, 54
  - synonyms, 56
  - usage, 55
- direct quotations, 191–197
- do, due*, 7
  
- effect, affect*, 4
- essays, 206–214, 221–234
- except, accept*, 4
- exclamation points, 170–175
  
- fanboys*, 88–89, 93, 169,  
176–182, 190
- feel, fill*, 7
- foreign words/phrases, 58
- fourth, forth*, 7

fragments, 59–60, 81–86, 93–94  
 free writing, 220–222

*have, of*, 7  
*bear, here*, 7

independent clauses, 61–66  
 punctuation of, 87–94, 169–182  
 interjections, 23  
 introductory paragraphs, 208, 210,  
 223–224  
 irregular verbs, 107–115  
*it's, its*, 8  
 italics, 191–197

*knew, new*, 8  
*know, no*, 8

*lead, led*, 13  
*loose, lose*, 13

misplaced modifiers, 133–136

narration, 216–218  
*new, knew*, 8  
*no, know*, 8  
 nouns, 22, 61, 67, 137

*of, have*, 7  
 often-confused words, 4–21  
 organizing ideas, 222–227  
*our, are*, 5

paper formats, 235  
 paragraphs, 208–214, 224–228  
 parallel structure, 149–154  
 parts of speech, 22–27, 54  
*passed, past*, 13  
*peace, piece*, 14  
 periods, 169–175  
*personal, personnel*, 13  
 phrases, 59, 80–81  
 prepositional, 67–72  
 verb, 95–99  
 verbal, 126–132

*piece, peace*, 14  
 possessives, 41–48  
 prefixes, 49  
 prepositional phrases, 67–72  
 prepositions, 22, 67  
*principal, principle*, 14  
 pronoun agreement, 156–158  
 pronoun reference, 158–159  
 pronouns, 22, 156–163  
 pronunciation, 53  
 proofreading, 233–234  
 punctuation, 169–203  
 colons, 169–175  
 commas, 176–190  
 dashes, 170–175  
 exclamation points, 169–175  
 periods, 169–175  
 question marks, 169–175  
 quotation marks, 191–197  
 semicolons, 169–175

question marks, 169–175  
 quotation marks, 191–197  
*quiet, quite*, 14

regular verbs, 106–115  
 revision, 230–234  
*right, write*, 14  
 run-on sentences, 59–60, 87–94

semicolons, 169–175  
 sentence patterns, 137–143  
 sentence structure, 59–168  
 awkward phrasing, 59, 145–148  
 clichés, 144–148  
 dependent clauses, 73–79, 81–83, 88  
 fragments, 59–60, 81–86, 93–94  
 misplaced/dangling modifiers,  
 133–136  
 parallel structure, 149–154  
 prepositional phrases, 67–72  
 pronouns, 156–163  
 regular/irregular verbs, 106–115  
 run-on sentences, 87–94

- sentence structure (*cont.*)
- sentence patterns, 137–143
  - shifts in time, 123–125
  - subject-verb agreement, 116–122
  - subjects/verbs, 61–66
  - verb phrases, 95–99
  - verbal phrases, 126–132
  - wordiness, 145–148
- shifts in person, 164–165
- shifts in time, 123–125
- spelling, 3–58
- breaking words into parts, 49
  - contractions, 35–40
  - dictionaries, 53–58
  - doubling a final letter, 49–51
  - often-confused words, 4–21
  - parts of speech, 22–27, 54
  - possessives, 41–48
- Standard English verbs, 100–105
- subject-verb agreement, 116–122
- subjects, 61–66
- summaries, 241–246
- supporting points, 227–228
- synonyms, 56
- than, then*, 14
- their, there, they're*, 15
- thesis statements, 223–224
- threw, through*, 15
- too, to, two*, 15
- topic, finding a, 220–222
- topic sentences, 225
- transitional expressions, 225–226
- transitions, 225–227
- two, too, to*, 15
- underlining, 191–197
- verb phrases, 95–99
- verbal phrases, 126–132
- verbs, 22
- finding, 61–66
  - irregular, 107–115
  - regular, 106–115
  - shifts in time, 123–125
  - Standard English forms, 100–105
  - subject-verb agreement, 116–122
- voice, 215–219
- weather, whether*, 15
- were, wear, where*, 16
- who's, whose*, 16
- woman, women*, 16
- wordiness, 145–148
- write, right*, 14
- writing, 206–250
- description, 215, 218–219
  - essays, 206–214, 220–234
  - finding a topic, 220–222
  - narration, 216–219
  - organizing ideas, 222–227
  - paragraphs, 206–214, 224–226
  - presentation, 235
  - revision, 230–234
  - summaries, 241–246
  - supporting with details, 227–228
  - thesis statements, 223–224
  - titles, 235
  - topic sentences, 225
  - voice, 215–219
- you're, your*, 16

*This page intentionally left blank*

## LISTS USED IN THE BOOK

Correction Symbols (Inside Front Cover)  
Words Often Confused (Set 1) (pp. 4–8)  
Words Often Confused (Set 2) (pp. 13–16)  
The Eight Parts of Speech (pp. 22–23)  
Contractions (pp. 35–36)  
How to Make a Possessive (p. 42)  
Common Prefixes (p. 49)  
Prepositions (p. 67)  
Words That Create Dependent Clauses (p. 73)  
Words That Connect Independent Clauses (p. 87)  
Ways to Correct Run-On Sentences (p. 89)  
Ways to Punctuate Clauses (p. 93)  
Examples of Verb Phrases (p. 95)  
Regular Verbs (p. 106)  
Irregular Verbs (p. 108)  
Three Kinds of Verbals (p. 126)  
Three Basic Sentence Patterns (p. 139)  
Clichés to Avoid (p. 144)  
Wordy Expressions to Avoid (p. 146)  
Subject and Object Pronouns (p. 155)  
Six Comma Rules (p. 190)  
Transitional Expressions (pp. 226)  
Types of Support (p. 228)  
Revision Checklist (p. 233)  
Summary Checklist (p. 246)